THE
RUDIMENTS
OF THE
Latin Tongue;
OR,
A plain and easy Introduction
TO
Latin Grammar;
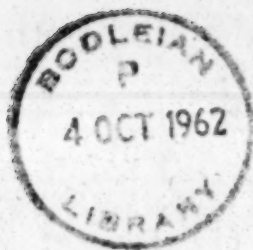### WHEREIN

The PRINCIPLES of the LANGUAGE are methodically digested both in ENGLISH and LATIN.

WITH

Useful NOTES *and* Observations, *explaining the* TERMS *of* GRAMMAR, *and further improving its* RULES.

By THO. RUDDIMAN, *M. A.*

The Eleventh Edition corrected.

THE
PREFACE.

AMONG the several Instructors of Youth in this Nation, many have for a long Time complained, that the two *Rudiments* of the *Latin* Tongue commonly taught in our Schools, are many ways insufficient in respect to the End proposed by them: That the one is written wholly in *Latin*, the very Language it is designed to teach; that the other is defective, particularly in the *Syntax*; and that the Rules of both are often obscure and intricate, and sometimes false and erroneous. Whereupon some knowing Masters of that Profession, by their repeated Sollicitations, prevailed with me to undertake the compiling of a new *Rudiments*, which they conceived might in a great Measure be freed from the Faults and Defects of the former, and so

con-

contrived as to bring down its *Rules* to the
Level of a Boy's Capacity, and make them
enter with more Eafe and Familiarity into his
Mind. This is the End I had in View: With
what Succefs it has been profecuted, is a Pro-
vince for others, not me, to determine. How-
ever, if any thing inclines me to hope its
Acceptance in the World, it is owing to the
kind Affiftance I have had from time to time
of the above mentioned and other Gentle-
men, as the Duty of their refpective Employ-
ments would permit them. What difcoura-
ged me moft in this Undertaking, was the
different Opinions of *Grammarians*, with
the fharp Contefts and Difputes they have
had about the Method of *Inftruction*, and
the moft proper Way to communicate the
Latin Tongue to others with the greateft Fa-
cility and Expedition. It would be almoft
an endlefs Task to reckon up the various
Schemes that have been projected for that
Purpofe: Therefore I fhall engage no farther
in this Subject, than as it feems neceffary to
give my Reader a clear and diftinct View of
the Reafons that determined me to the Me-
thod I have followed.

I have long obferved, that thofe of our
Country, whofe Bufinefs it is to direct the
Studies of Youth, are greatly divided about
what an *Introduction to Latin Grammar*
ought

ought properly to contain, and in what Language its Precepts fhould be conveyed. Some are for contracting it into as narrow Limits as is poffible, and not to burden the Memory of the Learner with any Thing but what is effential and abfolutely neceffary: While others contend that this is too general, and not fufficient to direct his Practice, without the Addition of more particular Rules. Again, tho' the greater Part incline to have the firft *Principles* of *Grammar* communicated in a known Language, there are not a few, and of thefe fome Perfons of Diftinction, who are ftill for retaining them in *Latin*, which, tho' attended at firft with more Difficulty, makes (in their Judgment) a more lafting Impreffion on the Mind, and carries the Learner more directly to the Habit of fpeaking *Latin*, a Practice much ufed in our Schools. It appeared next to an Impoffibility to fatisfy fo many different Opinions: However, the Method I have taken feems to bid faireft for it. For I have reduced the *Subftance* of thefe *Rudiments* into a Sort of *Text*, and have given the *Latin* an *Englifh* Verfion, leaving the Mafter to his own Choice and Difcretion which to ufe. And that none may complain that the *Text* is too compendious, I have fubjoined large *Notes*, which, I humbly conceive, will fupply that Defect.

To

To render my Design of more general Use, I was obliged to fall in with this Expedient, which has produced one Inconvenience, namely, that the Book is thereby fwelled to a much greater Bulk than I could have wifhed, or fome perhaps will excufe; tho' the Reafons are fo obvious, that it is needlefs to relate them. I confefs I have been larger in the *Notes* than the Nature of a *Rudiments* feemed to require: But, as I prefume there is nothing in them but what may be ufeful either to Mafter or Scholar; and fince it was never my Intention that they fhould be all taught, or any of them with the fame Care as the *Effential Parts*, I thought they might the more eafily be difpenfed with. There is one Thing more which has confiderably increafed them, *viz.* the *Remarks* I have added on *Englifh Nouns,. Pronouns* and *Verbs;* which I judged ufeful on a double Account; *Firft,* As they ferve to illuftrate *Latin Grammar,* the firft Notions and Impreffions whereof we receive from the Language we ourfelves fpeak. *Secondly,* Becaufe the greater Number of thofe who are taught the *Latin* Tongue, reap little other Benefit from it, than as it enables them to fpeak and write *Englifh* with the greater Exactnefs, I fuppofed it would not be amifs to throw in fomething in order to that End.
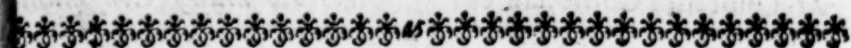
Having

Having thus given a general *Plan* of my Undertaking, all I shall say of the particular Management of it, is, that I have laboured all along to render every Thing as plain and easy as I possibly could, considering with a tender Regard for whose Benefit it is designed. I have consulted the best *Grammarians* both Ancient and Modern, and have borrowed from them whatever I conceived fit for my Purpose; tho' not contenting myself with their bare Authority, I frequently had Recourse to the Fountain itself, I mean, the purest Writers of the *Latin* Tongue. As thus I have been sollicitous to avoid *Error*, so I have been cautious not to incur the Censure of having affected *Novelty*, and therefore have receded no farther from the common *Systems*, than I think they have receded from Truth; retaining the usual *Terms* of *Art*, which have so long obtained in the Schools, tho' sometimes I have taken the Liberty, as I saw Occasion for it, to explain them my own Way. That I might lay no more Weight on the Memories of Children than they could well bear, I have reduced the *Rules* to as small a Number as the Subject would allow of, and conceived them in as few Words as was consistent with Perspicuity; leaving it to the Industry of the Teacher to explain them more fully, as he shall find necessary, with-

out

out which no *Rules* can be fufficient. The *Syntax* is indeed longer than was to be wifhed; but I frankly own, that I do not fee how it can be made much fhorter, without either confounding its Order, or leaving out the *Elliptical Rules.* However, to remove the Objection as much as I could, I have fubjoined a more *Compendious Syntax,* confifting only of a few *Fundamental Rules,* which may be taught alone, or before the other, as the Judgment and Difcretion of the Mafter fhall direct him.

THE
RUDIMENTS
OF THE
Latin Tongue:
OR,
A plain and easy Introduction
TO
Latin Grammar.

PARS PRIMA.
De Literis & Syllabis.

Magister.

QUOT funt Literæ apud Latinos?

Difcipulus. Quinque & viginti; *a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j,* l, m, n, o, p, q, r, ſ, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. Quomodo dividuntur?

D. In Vocales & Confonantes.

M. Quot funt Vocales?

D. Sex; *a, e, i, o, u, y.*

PART FIRST.
Of Letters and Syllables.

Master.

HOW many Letters are there among the Latins?

Scholar. *Five and twenty;* a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p, q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

M. *How are they divided?*

S. *Into Vowels and Confonants.*

M. *How many Vowels are there?*

S. *Six;* a, e, i, o, u, y.

A   M. Quot

M. Quot funt Confonantes?

M. *How many Confonants are there?*

D. Novemdecim ; *b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.*

S. *Nineteen* ; b, c, d, f, g, h, j, k, l, m, n, p, q, r, s, t, v, x, z.

M. Quot funt Diphthongi ?

M. *How many Diphthongs are there ?*

D. Quinque ; *ae,* [vel *æ*] *oe,* [vel *œ*] *au, eu, ei* ; ut, *aetas,* vel *ætas, poena,* vel *pœna, audio, euge, hei.*

S. *Five* ; ae, [*or* æ] oe, [*or* œ] au, eu, ei ; *as,* aetas, *or* ætas, poena, *or* pœna, audio, euge, hei.

N O T E S.

GRAMMAR is the Art of fpeaking any Language rightly, as *Hebrew, Greek, Latin, Englifh,* &c.

Latin Grammar is The Art of fpeaking rightly the *Latin Tongue.*

The *RUDIMENTS* of that Grammar Are plain and eafy Inftructions, teaching Beginners the firft Principles, or the moft common and neceffary Rules of *Latin.*

The *Rudiments* may be reduced to thefe four Heads, I. Treating of *Letters.* II. Of *Syllables.* III. Of *Words.* IV. Of *Sentences.*

Thefe are naturally made up one of another ; for one or more Letters make a Syllable, one or more Syllables make a Word, and two or more Words make a Sentence.

A *Letter* is a Mark or Character reprefenting an uncompounded Sound.

K, T, Z, are only to be found in Words originally *Greek,* and *H* by fome is not accounted a Letter, but a Breathing.

We reckon the *J.* called *Jod* [or *Je*] and the *V.* called *Vau,* two Letters diftinct from *I* and *V,* becaufe not only their Figures, but their Powers or Sounds are quite different ; *J* founding like *G* before *E,* and *V* almoft like *F.*

A *Vowel* is a Letter that makes a full and perfect Sound by itfelf.

A *Confonant* is a Letter that cannot found without a Vowel.

A *Syllable* is any one complete Sound.

There can be no Syllable without a Vowel : And any of the fix Vowels alone, or any Vowel with one or more Confonants before or after it, make a Syllable.

There are for the moft part as many Syllables in a Word as there are Vowels in it. Only there are two Kinds of Syllables in which it is otherwife, *viz.* 1. When *V* with any other Vowel, comes after *G, Q* or *S,* as in *Lingua, Qui, Suadeo* ; where the Sound of the *V* vanifhes, or is little heard. 2. When two Vowels join to make a Diphthong, or double Vowel.

A *Diphthong* is a Sound compounded of the Sounds of two Vowels, fo as both of them are heard.

Of *Diphthongs* three are *Proper, viz. au, eu, ei,* in which both Vowels are heard ; and two *Improper, viz. æ, œ,* in which the *a* and *o* are not heard, but they are pronounced as *e* fimple.

Some, not without reafon, to thefe five Diphthongs add other three ; as, *ai* in *Maia, oi* in *Troia, yi* or *ui* in *Harpyia* or *Harpuia.*

PARS

PARS SECUNDA.	PART SECOND.
De Dictionibus.	Of Words.
M. Quot funt Partes Orationis?	M. How many Parts of Speech are there?
D. Octo, *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium; Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*	S. Eight; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle; Adverb, Prepofition, Interjection, Conjunction.
M. Quomodo dividuntur?	M. How are they divided?
D. In Declinabiles & Indeclinabiles.	S. Into Declinable and Indeclinable.
M. Quot funt Declinabiles?	M. How many are declinable?
D. Quatuor; *Nomen, Pronomen, Verbum, Participium.*	S. Four; Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle.
M. Quot funt Indeclinabiles?	M. How many are Indeclinable?
D. Item quatuor; *Adverbium, Præpositio, Interjectio, Conjunctio.*	S. Likewife four; Adverb, Prepofition, Interjection, Conjunction.

A *WORD*, [*Vox* or *dictio*] is one or more Syllables joined together, which Men have agreed upon to fignify fomething.

Words are commonly reduced to eight *Claffes*, called *Parts of Speech:* But fome comprife them all under three Claffes, *viz. Noun, Verb* and *Adverb.* Under *Noun* they comprehend alfo *Pronoun* and *Participle*; and under *Adverb,* alfo *Prepofition, Interjection* and *Conjunction.* Others to thefe add a fourth *Clafs, viz. Adnoun,* comprehending Adjectives under it, and reftricting *Noun* to *Subftantives* only. Thefe by fome are otherwife called *Names, Qualities, Affirmations* and *Particles.*

The declinable Parts of Speech are fo called, becaufe there is fome Change made upon them, efpecially in their laft Syllables: And this is what we call *Declenfion* or *declining* of Words. But the indeclinable Parts continue unchangeably the fame.

The laft Syllable, on which thefe Changes do fall, is called the *Ending* or *Termination* of Words.

Thefe Changes are made by what Grammarians call *Accidentia,* i. e. *The Accidents* of Words.

Thefe *Accidents* are commonly reckoned Six, *viz. Gender, Cafe, Number; Mood, Tenfe,* and *Perfon.* Of thefe, *Gender* and *Cafe* are peculiar to three of the declinable Parts of Speech, *viz. Noun, Pronoun* and *Participle;* and *Mood, Tenfe* and *Perfon* are peculiar to one of them, *viz. Verb:* And *Number* is common to them all.

NOTE, 1. That *Perfon* may alfo be faid to belong to Noun or Pronoun: But then it is not properly an Accident, becaufe no Change is made by it in the Word.

A 2   NOTE,

NOTE 2. That *Figure, Species,* and *Comparison,* which some call *Accidents,* do not properly come under that Name, because the Words have a different Signification from what they had before. *See Chap.* IX.

NOTE 3. That the Changes that happen to a Noun, Pronoun, and Participle, are in a stricter Sense called *Declension* or *Declination* of them; and the Changes that happen to a Verb are called *Conjugation.*

CAP. I.
De Nomine.

M. QUomodo declinatur Nomen?

D. Per Genera, Casus & Numeros.

M. Quot sunt Genera?

D. Tria; *Masculinum, Fœmininum,* & *Neutrum.*

M. Quot sunt Casus?

D. Sex; *Nominativus, Genitivus, Dativus, Accusativus, Vocativus* & *Ablativus.*

M. Quot sunt Numeri?

D. Duo; *Singularis* & *Pluralis.*

M. Quot sunt Declinationes?

D. Quinque; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia, Quarta* & *Quinta.*

REGULÆ GENERALES.

1. Nomina neutri generis habent Nominativum, Accusativum & Vocativum similes in utroque Numero: & hi Casus in Plurali semper desinunt in *a.*

2. Vocativus in Singulari plerumque in plurali semper, est similis Nominativo.

CHAP. I.
Of 𝕹𝕠𝕦𝕟.

M. HOW is a Noun declined?

S. By Genders, Cases and Numbers.

M. How many Genders are there?

S. Three; Masculine, Feminine *and* Neuter.

M. How many Cases are there?

S. Six; Nominative, Genitive, Dative, Accusative, Vocative *and* Ablative.

M. How many Numbers are there?

S. Two; Singular and Plural.

M. How many Declensions are there?

S. Five; First, Second, Third, Fourth *and* Fifth.

GENERAL RULES.

1. *Nouns of the Neuter Gender have the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative alike in both Numbers: And these Cases in the Plural end always in a.*

2. *The Vocative for the most part in the Singular, [and] always in the Plural, is like the Nominative.*

3. Dativ

3. Dativus & Ablativus Plu-	3. *The Dative and Ablative*
alis funt fimiles.	*Plural are alike.*
4. Nomina propria plerum-	4. *Proper Names for the moſt*
que carent plurali.	*part want the Plural.*

A *NOUN* is that Part of Speech which ſignifies the Name or Quali-
ty of a Thing; as *Homo*, a Man; *Bonus*, good.

A Noun is either *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*.

A *Subſtantive Noun* is, That which ſignifies the Name of a Thing; as
Arbor, a Tree; *Virtus*, Virtue; *Bonitas*, Goodneſs.

An *Adjective Noun* is, That which ſignifies an Accident, Quality, or
Property of a Thing; as, *Albus*, white; *Felix*, happy; *Gravis*, heavy.

A Subſtantive may be diſtinguiſhed from an Adjective theſe two Ways.
1. A Subſtantive can ſtand in a Sentence without an Adjective, but an Ad-
jective cannot without a Subſtantive; as, I can ſay, *A Stone falls*, but I
cannot ſay, *Heavy falls*. 2. If the Word *Thing* be joined with an Ad-
jective, it will make Senſe; but if it be joined with a Subſtantive, it will
make Nonſenſe: Thus we ſay, *A good Thing, A white Thing*; but we do
not ſay a *Man Thing, A Beaſt Thing*.

A Subſtantive Noun is divided into *Proper* and *Appellative*.

A *Proper Subſtantive* is that which agrees to one particular Thing of a
Kind; as, *Virgilius*, a Man's Name; *Penelope*, a Woman's Name; *Scotia*,
Scotland; *Edinburgum*, Edinburgh; *Taus*, the Tay.

An *Appellative Subſtantive* is, That which is common to a whole Kind
of Things; as, *Vir*, a Man; *Fæmina*, a Woman; *Regnum*, a Kingdom;
Urbs, a City; *Fluvius*, a River.

NOTE, That, when a proper Name is applied to many, it becomes an
Appellative; as, *duodecim Cæſares*, the twelve Cæſars.

GENDER in a natural Senſe is the Diſtinction of Sex, or the Diffe-
rence between Male and Female: But, in a Grammatical Senſe, we com-
monly underſtand by it, The Fitneſs that a *Subſtantive Noun* hath to be join-
ed to an *Adjective* of ſuch a *Termination*, and not of another. Therefore,

Of Names of Animals, the *Hees* are of the Maſculine, and the *Shees*
of the Feminine Gender: But of Things without Life, and, where the Di-
verſity of Sex is not conſidered, even of Things that have Life, ſome are
of the Maſculine, others of the Feminine, and others of the Neuter Gen-
der, according to the Uſe of the beſt Authors of the *Latin* Tongue.

Beſides theſe three principal Genders, there are reckoned alſo other
three leſs principal, which are nothing elſe but Compounds of the three
former, *viz.* The Gender *Common to two*, the Gender *Common to three*, and
the *doubtful* Gender.

I. The *Common Gender*, or Gender common to two, [*Genus commune*, or
commune duûm] is Maſculine and Feminine; and belongs to ſuch Nouns
as agree to both Sexes: As, *Parens*, a Father or Mother; *Bos*, an Ox or
Cow.

II. The *Gender common to three*, [*Genus commune trium*] is Maſculine, Femi-
nine and Neuter; and belongs only to Adjectives. Whereof ſome have
three Terminations, the firſt Maſculine, the ſecond Feminine, and the
third Neuter; as, *Bonus, bona, bonum*, good. Some have two, the firſt
Maſculine and Feminine, and the ſecond Neuter; as, *Mollis, molle*, ſoft.

And some have but one Termination, which agrees indifferently to any of the three Genders; as, *Prudens*, wise.

III. The *Doubtful Gender* [*Genus dubium*] belongs to such Nouns as are found in good Authors sometimes in one Gender, and sometimes in another; as, *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. *Vulgus* the Rabble, Masc. or Neut.

[*We have excepted out of the Number of Genders the* Epicene, *or Promiscuous Gender; for, properly speaking, there is no such Gender distinct from the three chief ones, or the doubtful. There are indeed* Epicene *Nouns, that is, some Names of Animals in which the Distinction of Sex is either not at all, or very obscurely considered; and these are generally of the Gender of their Termination; as,* Aquila, *an Eagle,* Femin. *because it ends in* a; Passer, *a Sparrow,* Mascul. *because it ends in* er. (See p. 8. and 11.) *So* Homo, *a Man or Woman,* Masc. Mancipium, *a Slave,* Neut. Anguis, *a Serpent,* Doubtful.]

To distinguish these Genders we make Use of these three Words, *Hic, hæc, hoc,* which are commonly, though improperly, called *Articles.* *Hic* is the Sign of the Masc. *hæc* of the Fem. *hoc* of the Neut. Gender; *hic* & *hæc* of the Common to two; *hic, hæc, hoc* of the Common to three; *hic aut hæc; hic aut hoc, &c.* of the doubtful.

By *CASES* we understand the different Terminations that Nouns receive in declining: So called from *cado,* to fall, because they naturally fall or flow from the Nominative, which is therefore called *Casus rectus,* the straight Case; as the other five are named *Obliqui,* crooked.

The *Singular NUMBER* denotes one single Thing; as, *Homo,* a Man; the *Plural* denotes more things than one; as, *Homines,* Men.

¶ Before the Learner proceeds to the Declension of Latin Nouns, it may not perhaps be improper to give him a general View of

The Declension *of* English Nouns.

I. The English Language hath the two *Genders* of Nature, *viz.* Masculine and Feminine; for Animals in it are called *HE* or *SHE,* according to the Difference of their Sex: And almost every Thing without Life is called *IT.* But because all the Adjectives of this Language are of one Termination, it has no Occasion for any other Genders.

II. The English, properly speaking, has no *Cases,* because there is no Alteration made in the Words themselves, as in the Latin; but instead thereof we use some little Words called *PARTICLES.*

Thus, The *Nominative Case* is the simple Noun itself: The Particle *OF* put before it, or *'s* after it, makes the *Genitive: TO* or *FOR* before it makes the *Dative:* The *Accusative* is the same with the *Nominative:* The *Vocative* hath *O* before it: And the *Ablative* hath *WITH, FROM, IN, BY,* &c.

NOTE, 1. That when a Substantive comes before a Verb, it is called the Nominative; when it follows after a Verb Active, without a Preposition inter[v]eening, it is called the Accusative.

NOTE, 2. That the Apostrophus or Sign ['] is not used in the Genitive Plural; as *Mens Works, the Apostles Creed.*

NOTE, 3. That *TO* the Sign of the Dative, and *O* of the Vocative, are frequently omitted or understood.

Besides these there are other two little Words called *ARTICLES,* which are

to an_e commonly put before Substantive Nouns, *viz.* *A* [or *An* before a _owel, or *H*] called the *Indefinite Article*, and *THE* called the *Definite.*
A or *An* signifies as much as the Adjective *One*, and is put for it; as *A Man*, that is, *one Man.* *The* is a Pronoun, and signifies almost the _ame with *This* or *That*, and *These*, or *Those.*

NOTE, 1. That proper Names of Men, Women, Towns, Kingdoms, _nd Appellatives, when used in a very general Sense, have none of these _rticles; as, *Man is mortal*, i. e. every Man; *God abhors Sin*; i. e. all _ns: But proper Names of Rivers, Ships, Hills, &c. frequently have _he; as, *The Thames, The Britannia, The Alps.*

NOTE, 2. That the Vocative has none of these Articles, and the Plu-_al wants the Indefinite.

NOTE, 3. That when an Adjective is joined with a Substantive, the _rticle is put before both, as, *A good Man, The good Man:* And the De-_inite is put before the Adjective when the Substantive is understood; as, _he just shall live by Faith*, i. e. *The just Man.*

III. The English hath two *Numbers* as the Latin, and the Plural is com-_only made by putting an *s* to the Singular; as, *Book, Books.*

EXC. 1. Such as end in *ch, sh, ss* and *x*, which have *es* added to their _ingular; as, *Church-es, Brush-es, Witness-es, Box-es.* Where it is to be _oticed, that such Words have a Syllable more in the Plural than in the _ingular Number. Which likewise happens to all Words ending in *ce,* _e, se, ze*; as, *Faces, Ages, Houses, Mazes.* The Reason of this pro-_eeds from the near Approach these Terminations have in their Sound _o an *s*, so that their Plural could not be distinguished from the Sing. _ithout the Addition of another Syllable. And for the same Reason, _erbs of these Terminations have a Syllable added to them in their third Person Sing. of the present Tense.

EXC. 2. Words that end in *f* or *fe*, have their Plural in *ves*; as, *Calf, Calves*; *Leaf, Leaves*; *Wife, Wives:* But not always, for *Hoof, Roof, Grief, Mischief, Dwarf, Strife, Muff*, &c. retain *f.* *Staff* has *Staves.*

EXC. 3. Some have their Plural in *en*; as, *Man, Men, Woman, Wo-men*; *Child, Children*; *Chick, Chicken*; *Brother, Brothers* or *Brethren*; (which _ast is seldom used but in Sermons, or in a Burlesque Sense.)

EXC. 4. Some are more irregular; as, *Die, Dice, Mouse, Mice*; *Louse, Lice*; *Goose, Geese*; *Foot, Feet*; *Tooth, Teeth*; *Penny, Pence*; *Sow, Sows* and *Swine*; *Cow, Cows*, and *Kine.*

EXC. 5. Some are the same in both Numbers; as, *Sheep, Hose, Swine, Chicken, Pease, Deer*; *Fish* and *Fishes, Mile* and *Miles, Horse* and *Horses.*

NOTE, That as Nouns in *y* do often change *y* into *ie*, so these have rather *ies* than *ys* in the Plural; as, *Cherry, Cherries.*

An *English Noun* is thus declined.

	A, The		The	
Nom.	*King,*		Nom.	*Kings,*
Gen. of	*King,*		Gen. of	*Kings,*
Dat. to [for]	*King,*		Dat. to [for]	*Kings,*
Acc.	*King,*		Acc.	*Kings,*
Voc. O	*King,*		Voc. O	*Kings,*
Abl. with, from, in, by, *King* :			Abl. with, from, in, by, *Kings.*	

Singular. Plural.

A 4 *Prima*

Prima Declinatio.	The First Declension.
M. QUomodo dignoſcitur Prima Declinatio?	*M.* HOW is the Firſt Declenſion known?
D. Per Gentivum & Dativum ſingularem in *a* diphthongon.	*S.* By the Genitive and Dative ſingular in æ Diphthong.
M. Quot habet Terminationes?	*M.* How many Terminations hath it?
D. Quatuor; *a, e, as, es*; ut, Penna, Penelope.	*S.* Four; a, e, as, es; as, Æneas, Anchiſes.

Penna, *a Pen,* Fem.

Sing.		Plur.		Terminations.	
Nom. penna,	*a pen.*	*Nom.* pennæ,	*pens.*	a,	æ,
Gen. pennæ,	*of a pen.*	*Gen.* pennarum,	*of pens.*	æ,	arum
Dat. pennæ,	*to a pen.*	*Dat.* pennis,	*to pens.*	æ,	is,
Acc. pennam,	*a pen.*	*Acc.* pennas,	*pens.*	am,	as,
Voc. penna,	*O pen.*	*Voc.* pennæ,	*O pens.*	a,	æ,
Abl. penna,	*with a pen.*	*Abl.* pennis,	*with pens.*	a,	is.

¶ After the ſame manner you may decline *Litera,* a Letter; *Via,* a Way; *Galea,* an Helmet; *Tunica,* a Coat; *Toga,* a Gown.

A is a Latin Termination, *e, as* and *es* are Greek.

Nouns in *a* and *e* are Feminine, in *as* and *es* Maſculine.

RULE, *Filia,* a Daughter; *Nata,* a Daughter; *Dea,* a Goddeſs; *Anima,* the Soul, with ſome others, have more frequently *abus* than *is* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur. to diſtinguiſh them from Maſculines in *us* of the Second Declen.

¶ In declining *Greek Nouns* obſerve the following Rules.

1. Greek Nouns in *as* [and *a*] have ſometimes their Accuſative [with the Poets] in *an*; as, *Æneas, Æneam* vel *Ænean*; [*Oſſa, Oſſam* vel *Oſſan.*]

2. Theſe in *es* have their Accuſative in *en*, and their Vocative and Ablative in *e*: As,

     Nom. Anchiſes,   *Accuſ.* Anchiſen,

     Voc. Anchiſe,   *Ablat.* Anchiſe.

3. Nouns in *e* have their Genitive in *es*, their Accuſative in *en*, their Dative, Vocative and Ablative in *e*: As,

     Nom. Penelope,   *Gen.* Penelopes,

     Dat. Penelope,   *Acc.* Penelopen.

     Voc. Penelope,

     Abl. Penelope.

[As to the Dative of Words in *e*, I have followed Probus and Priſcian among the Ancients; Lilly, Alvarus, Voſſius, Meſſieurs de Port Royal, Johnſon, &c. among the Moderns. And tho' none of them cite any Example, yet I remember to have obſerved three ſuch Datives, viz. Cybele in Virg. Æn. XI.

768.

768. Penelope *in* Martial, Epig. XI, 8, 9. *and* Epigone *in* Reinefii Syntag. Infcrip. Claff. 14. Num. 85. *But* Diomedes *and* Difpauter *seem to be of Opinion, that thefe Nouns have* æ *in their Dative. The Reafon that moved the former is, becaufe they thought it incongruous, that feeing Nouns in* e *generally follow the Greek in all their other Cafes, they fhould follow the Latin in their Dative only, efpecially fince their Ablative, which anfwers to the Greek Dative, ends in* e. *As, on the contrary, they maintain, that if fuch Nouns have* æ *in their Dative, it muft come from a Nominative in* a; *of which there are fome Examples yet extant: And then they may likewife have their Accufative in* am; *as* Penelopam, Circam *in* Plautus, Lycambam *in* Terentianus Maurus. *Thus* Helenæ *or* Helenes, Helenam *or* Helenen, *are frequently to be met with in Poets; who alfo turn fuch Words as commonly end in* a, *into* e *in the Nominative and Vocative, when the Meafure of their Verfe requires it. And here it may not be improper to remark, that even Greek Words in* es *have fometimes their Nominative and Vocative in* a, (*whence comes their Genitive and Dative in* æ:) *And, if Mr.* Johnfon's *Citations are right, both* es *and* e *have fometimes their Accufative in* em.]

Secunda Declinatio.

M. QUomodo dignofcitur Secunda Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum fingularem in *i*, & Dativum in *o*.

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Septem; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on*; ut,

Gener, a Son in-law; *Vir*, a Man; *Satur*, full; *Dominus*, a Lord; *Regnum*, a Kingdom; *Synodos*, a Synod; *Albion*, the Ifland Albion, or Great Britain.

The Second Declenfion.

M. HOW is the Second Declenfion known?

S. By the Genitive fingular in i, and Dative in o.

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. Seven; *er, ir, ur, us, um, os, on*; *as*,

Gener, *a Son-in-law*, Mafc.

Sing.		Plur.		Terminations.	
Nom.	gener,	Nom.	generi,	er, ir, us,	i,
Gen.	generi,	Gen.	generorum,	i,	orum,
Dat.	genero,	Dat.	generis,	o,	is,
Acc.	generum,	Acc.	generos,	um,	os,
Voc.	gener,	Voc.	generi,	er, ir, e,	i,
Abl.	genero:	Abl.	generis.	o:	is.

After the fame Manner you may decline *Puer*, a Boy; *Socer*, a Father-in-law; *Vir*, a Man, &c. But *Liber*, a Book; *Magifter*, a Mafter; *Alexander*, a Man's Name, and moft other Subftantives in *er* lofe the *e* before *r*: Thus *Sing. Num.* Liber, *Gen.* libri, *Dat.* libro, *Accuf.* librum, *Voc.* liber, *Abl.* libro. *Plur. Num.* libri, *Gen.* librorum, &c.

Domi-

Dominus, *a Lord*, Masc.

Sing.		Plur.		Thus,
Nom.	dominus,	Nom.	domini,	Ventus, *the Wind,*
Gen.	domini,	Gen.	dominorum,	Oculus, *the Eye,*
Dat.	domino,	Dat.	dominis,	Fluvius, *a River.*
Acc.	dominum,	Acc.	dominos,	Puteus, *a Well.*
Voc.	domine,	Voc.	domini,	Focus, *a common Fire.*
Abl.	domino :	Abl.	dominis.	Rogus, *a Funeral Pile.*

Regnum, *a Kingdom*, Neut.

Sing.		Plur.		Thus,
Nom.	regnum,	Nom.	regna,	
Gen.	regni,	Gen.	regnorum,	Templum, *a Church.*
Dat.	regno,	Dat.	regnis,	Ingenium, *Wit.*
Acc.	regnum,	Acc.	regna,	Horreum, *a Barn.*
Voc.	regnum,	Voc.	regna,	Canticum, *a Song.*
Abl.	regno :	Abl.	regnis.	Jugum, *a Yoke.*

REGULÆ.	RULES.
I. Nominativus in *us* facit Vocativum in *e*; ut, *Ventus, vente.*	I. *The Nominative in* us *makes the Vocative in* e; *as,* Ventus, vente.
II. Propria in *ius* perdunt *us* in Vocativo; ut, *Georgius, Georgi.*	II. *Proper Names in* ius *lose* us *in the Vocative; as,* Georgius, Georgi.

Filius hath also *fili,* and *Deus* hath *Deus* in the Vocative, and in the Plural more frequently *Dii* and *Diis,* than *Dei* and *Deis.*

The most common Terminations of the second Declension are *er* and *us* of the Masc. and *um* of the Neut. Gender.

There is only one Noun in *ir* of this Declension, viz. *Vir,* a Man, with its Compounds, *Levir, Duumvir, Triumvir,* &c. and only one in *ur,* viz. *Satur,* full, (of old *Saturus*) an Adjective. *Os* and *on* are Greek Terminations, and generally changed into *us* and *um* in their Nominative. These, with other Greek Nouns in *us,* have sometimes their Acc. in *on.*

[We have excluded the Termination *eus* from this Declension, as belonging more properly to the Third; as, *Orpheus, Orpheos, Orphei, Orphea, Orpheu:* For when it is of the second Declension, it is *e-us,* of two Syllables, and so falls under the Termination *us*; Orphe-us, Orphe-i, (contracted Orphei and Orphi) Orphe-o, Orphe-um, (or Orphe-on) Orphe-o]

Tertia Declinatio.	The third Declension.
M. **Q**Uomodo dignoscitur Tertia Declinatio ?	M. **H**Ow is the Third Declension known:
	D. Per

D. Per Genitivum singula- | S. By the Genitive singular
rem in *is*, & Dativum in *i*. | in *is*, and Dative in *i*.

M. Quot habet Terminatio- | M. *How many Terminations*
nes seu syllabas finales? | *or final Syllables hath it?*

D. Septuaginta & unam. | S. Seventy and one.

M. Quot habet literas fina- | M. *How many final Letters*
les? | *hath it?*

D. Undecim; *a, e, o, c, d,* | S. *Eleven; a, e, o, c, d,*
l, n, r, s, t, x; ut, | *l, n, r, s, t, x; as,*

Diadema, a Crown; *Sedile*, a Seat; *Sermo*, Speech; *Lac*,
Milk; *David*, a Man's Name; *Animal*, a living Creature;
Pecten, a Comb; *Pater*, a Father; *Rupes*, a Rock; *Caput*, the
Head; *Rex*, a King.

Sermo, *Speech*, Masc.

Sing.		Plur.		Terminations.
Nom.	sermo,	Nom.	sermones,	*a, e, o,* &c. *es, a,*
Gen.	sermonis,	Gen.	sermonum,	*is, um, ium,*
Dat.	sermoni,	Dat.	sermonibus,	*i, ibus,*
Acc.	sermonem,	Acc.	sermones,	*em, es, a,*
Voc.	sermo,	Voc.	sermones,	*a, e, o,* &c. *es, a,*
Abl.	sermone:	Abl.	sermonibus.	*e, i: ibus.*

Sedile, *a Seat*, Neut.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom.	sedile,	Nom.	sedilia,
Gen.	sedilis,	Gen.	sedilium,
Dat.	sedili,	Dat.	sedilibus,
Acc.	sedile,	Acc.	sedilia,
Voc.	sedile,	Voc.	sedilia,
Abl.	sedili:	Abl.	sedilibus.

As Sermo, *so most Substantives of
this Declension in* a, o, c, d, n, t, x,
er, or, ur, as, os, us; (*except their
Acc. and Voc. when they are Neuters,
or when they want the Plural Num-
ber.*) *Also* (*when they have more Syl-
lables in their Gen. than Nom.*) *all
Words in* es, *and most of those in* is.

Of the final Letters of the third Declension, six are peculiar to it, *o, c, d,
t, x*; the other five are common to other Declensions, viz. *a, e, n, r, s*.

The copious final Letters are, *o, n, r, s, x*.

The copious final Syllables are, *io, do, go, en, er, or, as, es, is, os, us, ns, rs, ex*.

All Nouns in *a* of this Declension are originally Greek, and have al-
ways an *m* before it. There are only two Words in *c*; *Lac*, Milk; and
Halec, a Herring. Words in *d* are proper Names of Men, and very rare.
There are only three Words in *t*, viz. *Caput*, the Head, *Sinciput*, the
Fore-head; *Occiput*, the Hind-head.

1. The Terminations *er, or, os, o, n*,   Masculine.

2. The Terminations *io, do, go, as, es, is, ys,*   are   Feminine.
   aus, x, and *s* after a Consonant,

3. The Terminations, *a, c, e, l, men, ar, ur, us, ut*,   Neuter.

But from these there are many Exceptions.

Note,

NOTE, 1. That for the moſt part the Genitive hath a Syllable more than the Nominative; and where it is otherwiſe they generally end in *e, es,* or *u*

NOTE, 2. That whatever Letter or Syllable comes before *is* in the Genitive muſt run through the other Caſes (except the Accuſative and Vocative ſing of Neuters;) as, *Thema, -atis, -ati, -ate,* a Theme; *Sanguis-guinis,* Blood *Iter, -itineris,* a Journey; *Carmen, -minis,* a Verſe; *Judex, -dicis,* a Judge.

REGULÆ.	RULES.
1. Nomina in *e,* & Neutra in *al* & *ar,* habent *i* in Ablativo.	1. *Nouns in* e, *and Neuter in* al *and* ar, *have* i *in the Ablative.*
2. Quæ habent *e* tantum in Ablativo faciunt Genitivum pluralem in *um.*	2. *Theſe which have* e *only in the Ablative make their Genitive plural in* um.
3. Quæ habent *i* tantum vel *e* aut *i* ſimul, faciunt *ium.*	3. *Theſe which have* i *only or* e *and* i *together, make* ium.
4. Neutra quæ habent *e* in Ablativo ſingulari habent *a* in Nominativo, Accuſativo & Vocativo plurali.	4. *Neuters which have* e *in their Ablative ſing. have* a *in the Nominative, Accuſative and Vocative plural.*
5. At quæ habent *i* in Ablativo, faciunt *ia.*	5. *But theſe which have* i *in the Ablative, make* ia.

1. EXCEPTIONS in the Accuſative ſingular.

1. Some Nouns in *is* have *im* in the Accuſative; as, *Vis, vim,* Strength; *Tuſſis,* the Cough; *Sitis,* Thirſt; *Buris,* the Beam of a Plough; *Ravis,* Hoarſeneſs; *Amuſſis,* a Maſon's Rule. To which add Names of Rivers in *is;* as, *Tybris, Thameſis,* which the Poets ſometimes make in *in.*

2. Some in *is* have *em* or *im;* as, *Navis,* a Ship; *Puppis,* the Stern; *Securis,* an Ax; *Clavis,* a Key; *Febris,* a Fever; *Pelvis,* a Baſon; *Reſtis,* a Rope; *Turris,* a Tower; *Navem* vel *navim,* &c.

2. EXCEPTIONS in the Ablative ſingular.

1. Nouns which have *im* in the Accuſative have *i* in the Ablative; as, *Vis, vim, vi,* &c. Theſe that have *em* or *im* have *e* or *i;* as, *Navis, navem* vel *navim, nave* vel *navi.*

2. *Canalis, Vectis, Bipennis,* have *i: Avis, Amnis, Ignis, Unguis, Rus,* and *Imber,* with ſome others, have *e* or *i;* but moſt commonly *e.*

3. Theſe Neuters in *ar* have *e; Far, Jubar, Nectar* and *Hepar: Sal* alſo has *ſale.*

3. EXCEPTIONS in the Genitive plural.

1. Nouns of one Syllable in *as, is* and *s,* with a Conſonant before it, have *ium;* as, *As, aſſium; Lis, litium; Urbs, urbium.*

2. Alſo Nouns in *es* and *is,* not increaſing in their Genitive; as, *Vallis, vallium; Rupes, rupium,* Except *Panis, Canis, Vates* and *Volucris.*

3. To which add *Caro, Cor, Cos, Dos, Mus, Nix, Nox, Linter, Sal, Os, oſſis.*

NOTE, That when the Genitive Plural ends in *ium,* the Accuſative frequently inſtead of *es* has *eis* or *is;* as, *omneis, parteis,* or *omnis, partis,* for *omnes, partes.*

Of Greek Nouns.

I. Greek Nouns have fometimes their Genitive in *os*. And thefe are Such as increafe their Genitive with *d*; as, *Arcas, Arcadis* vel *Arcados*, an Arcadian; *Brifeis, -eidis* vel *-eidos*, a Woman's Name. 2. Such as increafe in *os* pure, *i. e.* with a Vowel before it; as, *Harefis, -eos* vel *-ios*, an Herefy. 3. To thefe add *Sphyngos, Strymonos* and *Panos*.

NOTE, That *is* is more frequent, except in the fecond Kind, and Patonymicks of the firft.

II. 1. Greek Words which increafe their Genitive in *is* or *os* not pure, (*i. e.* with a Confonant before it) have frequently their Accufative fing. in *a*, and plur. in *as*; as, *Lampas, lampadis, lampada, lampadas*; alfo *Minois, Minois, Minoa*; *Tros, Trois, Troa, Troas*; *Heros, herois, heroa, heroas*.

2. Words in *is* or *ys*, whofe Genitive ends in *os* pure, have their Accufative in *im* or *in*, and *ym* or *yn*; as, *Harefis, -eos, harefim*, or *-in*, *Chelys, -lyos*, a Lute; *chelym*, or *-lyn*. Of Words in *is* which have their Genitive in *dis* or *dos*, *Mafculines* have their Accufative for the moft part in *im* or *in*, feldom in *dem*, and never in *da*, that I know of; as, *Paris, Parim* vel *Parin*, vel *Paridem*; *Feminines* have moft commonly *dem* or *da*, and feldom *im* or *in*; as, *Brifeis, Brifeidem* vel *Brifeida*.

III. Feminines in *o* have *us* in their Genitive, and *o* in their other Cafes, as, *Dido, Didus, Dido*, &c. or they may be declined after the Latin Form, *Didonis, Didoni*, &c. which *Juno* (as being of a Latin original) always follows.

IV. Greek Nouns in *s* frequently throw away *s* in their Vocative; as, *Calchas, Achilles, Paris, Tiphys, Orpheus*; *Calcha, Achille, Pari, Tiphy, Orpheu*.

V. Greek Nouns have *um*, (and fometimes *ôn* in their Genitive plural; as, *Epigrammatôn, Harefeôn*) and very rarely *ium*.

VI. Greek Nouns in *ma* have moft frequently *is* in their Dative and Ablative plural; as, *Poëma, poëmatis*, becaufe of old they faid *poëmatum*. *Bos* has *boum*, and *bobus* or *bubus*.

Quarta Declinatio.	The Fourth Declenfion.
M. QUomodo dignofcitur Quarta Declinatio?	M. HOW is the Fourth Declenfion known?
D. Per Genitivum fingularem in *us*, & Dativum in *ui*.	S. By the Genitive fingular in us, and the Dative in ui.
M. Quot habet Terminationes?	M. How many Terminations hath it?
D. Duas; *us* & *u*; ut,	S. Two; us and u; as,

Fructus, *Fruit*; Cornu, *a Horn.*

Fructus, *Fruit,* Mafc.			Terminations.	
Nom. fructus,	Nom. fructus,		*us,*	*us,*
Gen. fructus,	Gen. fructuum,		*us,*	*uum,*
Dat. fructui,	Dat. fructibus,	Plur.	*ui,*	*ibus,*
Acc. fructum,	Acc. fructus,		*um,*	*us,*
Voc. fructus,	Voc. fructus;		*us,*	*us,*
Abl. fructu:	Abl. fructibus.		*u:*	*ibus.*

Cornu,

Cornu, *an Horn*, Neut.

Sing.		Plur.		
Nom. cornu,	*Nom.* cornua,	As Fructus, *fo Vultus, the Countenance, Manus, the Hand, Fem. Casus, a Fall or Chance.*
Gen. cornu,	*Gen.* cornuum,	
Dat. cornu,	*Dat.* cornibus,	
Acc. cornu,	*Acc.* cornua,	As Cornu, *fo* Genu, *the Knee;* Veru, *a Spit;*
Voc. cornu,	*Voc.* cornua,	Tonitru, *Thunder.*
Abl. cornu:	*Abl.* cornibus.	

Nouns in *us* of this Declension are generally Masculine, and these in *u* all Neuter, and indeclinable in the singular Number.

RULE. Some Nouns have *ubus* in their Dative and Ablative plural, viz. *Arcus,* a Bow; *Artus,* a Joint; *Lacus,* a Lake; *Acus,* a Needle; *Portus,* a Fort or Harbour; *Partus,* a Birth; *Tribus,* a Tribe; *Veru,* a Spit.

NOTE, That of old Nouns of this Declension belonged to the Third, and were declined as *Grus, gruis,* a Cran; thus, *Fructus, fructuis, fructui, fructuem, fructue: Fructues, fructuum, fructuibus, fructues, fructues, fructuibus.* So that all the Cases are contracted except the Dative sing. and Gentive plur. There are some Examples of the Genitive in *uis* yet extant; as on the contrary there are several of the Dative in *u.*

The blessed Name JE- SUS *is thus declined.*

Sing.	Plur. wanting
Nom. IESUS,	
Gen. IESU,	
Dat. IESU,	
Acc. IESUM,	
Voc. IESU,	
Abl. IESU.	

Domus, *an House,* Fem. *is thus declined.*

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom. domus,		*Nom.* domus,	
Gen. domus,	*v.* -mi.	*Gen.* domorum, *v,* -uum.	
Dat. domui,	*v.* -mo.	*Dat.* domibus,	
Acc. domum,		*Acc.* domos, *v.* -us.	
Voc. domus,		*Voc.* domus,	
Abl. domo:		*Abl.* domibus.	

[NOTE, *That the Genitive* domi *is only used when it signifies,* At home; domo, *the Dative, is found in* HORACE, *Epist.* l. 10. 13.]

Quinta Declinatio.

M. Quomodo dignoscitur Quinta Declinatio?

D. Per Genitivum & Dativum singularem in *ei.*

M. Quot habet Terminationes?

D. Unam, nempe *es;* ut, Res, *a Thing,* Fem.

The Fifth Declension.

M. HOW is the Fifth Declension known?

S. By the Genitive and Dative singular in *ei.*

M. How many Terminations hath it?

S. One, namely, *es;* as, Terminations.

Sing.		Plur.			
Nom. res,		*Nom.* res,	*es,*	*es,*	
Gen. rei,		*Gen.* rerum,	*ei,*	*erum,*	
Dat. rei,		*Dat.* rebus,	*ei,*	*ebus,*	
Acc. rem,		*Acc.* res,	*em,*	*es,*	
Voc. res,		*Voc.* res,	*es,*	*es,*	
Abl. re:		*Abl.* rebus,	*e:*	*ebus.*	

Nouns

Nouns of the fifth Declension are not above fifty, and are all Feminine except *Dies*, a Day, Masc. or Fem. and *Meridies*, the Mid-day or Noon, Masc.

All Nouns of this Declension end in *ies*, except three, *Fides*, Faith; *Spes*, Hope; *Res*, a Thing.

And all Nouns in *ies* are of the Fifth, except these four; *Abies*, a Fir-tree; *Aries*, a Ram; *Paries*, a Wall, and *Quies*, Rest; which are of the Third.

Most Nouns of this Declension want the Genitive, Dative and Ablative plural; and many of them want the Plural altogether.

General Remarks on all the Declensions.

1. The Genitive plural of the first four is sometimes contracted, especially by Poets; as *Cælicolûm, Deûm, Mensûm, Currûm*; for *Cælicolarum, Deorum, Mensium, Curruum*.

2. When the Genitive of the second ends in *ii*, the last *i* is sometimes taken away by Poets; as *Tuguri* for *Tugurii*. We read also *Aulai* for *aulæ* in the First, and *Fide* for *fides* in the Fifth; and so of other like Words.

Declinatio Adjectivorum.	The Declension of Adjectives.
ADjectiva sunt vel primæ & secundæDeclinationis, vel tertiæ tantum.	ADjectives are either of the First and Second Declension, or of the Third only.
Omnia adjectiva habentia tres Terminationes (præter (*a*) undecim) sunt primæ & secundæ: At quæ unam vel duas Terminationes habent, sunt tertiæ.	All Adjectives having three Terminations (except eleven) are of the First and Second: But these which have one or two Terminations, are of the Third.
Adjectiva primæ & secundæ habent Masculinum in *us*, (*b*) vel *er*; Fœmininum semper in *a*, Neutrum semper in *um*; ut,	Adjectives of the First and Second have their Masculine in us, or er; their Feminine always in a, and their Neuter always in um; as,
Bonus, bona, bonum, good;	*Tener, tenera, tenerum,* tender.

Bonus, bona, bonum, *good.*

Sing.				Plur.		
Nom. bon-us,	-a,	-um,		*Nom.* bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Gen. bon-i,	-æ,	-i,		*Gen.* bono-rum,	-arum,	-orum,
Dat. bon-o,	-æ,	-o,		*Dat.* bon-is,	-is,	-is,
Acc. bon-um,	-am,	-um,		*Acc.* bon-os,	-as,	-a,
Voc. bon-e,	-a,	-um,		*Voc.* bon-i,	-æ,	-a,
Abl. bon-o,	-a,	-o :		*Abl.* bon-is,	-is,	-is.

(*a*) Viz. *acer, alacer, celer, celeber, saluber, volucer, campester, equester, pedester, paluster, silvester*; which are of the Third, and have their Masculine in *er* or *is*, their Feminine in *is* and Neuter in *e*.

(*b*) For *satur*, full, was of old *saturus*.

Tener,

Tener, tenera, tenerum, *tender.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
N. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	N. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
G. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-eri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum,	-erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum,	-eram,	-erum,	A. ten-eros,	-eras,	-era,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum,	V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-era,	-ero :	A. ten-eris,	-eris,	-eris.

Adjectives ate declined as three Substantives of the same Terminations and Declensions: As in the Examples above, *bonus,* like *dominus*; *tener,* like *gener*; *bona* and *tenera* like *penna*; *bonum* and *tenerum* like *regnum.* Therefore the Ancients, as is clear from *Varro, lib. 3. de Anal.* declined every Gender separately, and not all three jointly, as we now commonly do: And perhaps it may not be amiss to follow this Method at first, especially if the Boy is of a slow Capacity.

Of Adjectives in *er,* some retain the *e,* as *tener.* So *miser, -era, -erum,* wretched; *liber, -era, -erum,* free, and all Compounds in *ger* and *fer.* Others lose it; as, *pulcher, pulchra, pulchrum,* fair; *niger, -gra, -grum,* black.

These following Adjectives, *unus,* one; *totus,* whole; *solus,* alone; *ullus,* any; *nullus,* none; *alius,* another of many; *alter,* another, *or* one of two; *neuter,* neither; *uter,* whether, with its Compounds; *uterque,* both; *uterlibet, utervis,* which of the two you please; *alteruter,* the one or the other; have their Genitive singular in *ius* and Dative in *i.*

Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis.	Adjectives of the third Declension.
1. *Unius Terminationis.*	1. Of one Termination.

Felix, *happy.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
N. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	N. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
G. fel-icis,	-icis,	-icis,	G. fel-icium,	-icium,	-icium,
D. fel-ici,	-ici,	-ici,	D. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus,
A. fel-icem,	-icem,	-ix,	A. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
V. fel-ix,	-ix,	-ix,	V. fel-ices,	-ices,	-icia,
A. fel-ice,	*vel* -ici, *&c.*		A. fel-icibus,	-icibus,	-icibus.

2. *Duarum Terminationum.*	2. Of two Terminations.

Mitis, mite, *meek.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
N. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	N. mites,	mites,	mitia,
G. mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	G. mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
D. miti,	miti,	miti,	D. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
A. mitem,	mitem,	mite,	A. mites,	mites,	mitia,
V. mitis,	mitis,	mite,	V. mites,	mites,	mitia,
A. miti,	miti,	miti :	A. mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

Mitior,

Mitior, mitius, *meeker.*

Sing.			Plur.		
N. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*N.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
G. miti-oris,	-oris,	-oris,	*G.* miti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
D. miti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	*D.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
A. miti-orem,	-orem,	-us,	*A.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
V. miti-or,	-or,	-us,	*V.* miti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
A. miti-ore *vel* -ori, *&c.*			*A.* miti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

3. *Trium Terminationum.*   3. Of three Terminations.

Acer *vel* acris, acris, acre, *Sharp.*

Sing.			Plur.		
N. a-cer *vel* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*N.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
G. a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	*G.* a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
D. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	*D.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
A. a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	*A.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
V. a-cer *vel* -cris,	-cris,	-cre,	*V.* a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
A. a-cri,	-cri,	-cri :	*A.* a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

R E G U L Æ.

1. Adjectiva tertiæ Declinationis habent *e* vel *i* in Ablativo singulari.

2. At si neutrum sit in *e*, Ablativus habet *i* tantum.

3. Genitivus pluralis desinit in ium ; & Neutrum Nominativi, Accusativi & Vocativi in a.

4. Excipe Comparativa, quæ *m* & *a* postulant.

R U L E S.

1. *Adjectives of the Third Declension have* e *or* i *in the Ablative singular.*

2. *But if the Neuter be in* e, *the Ablative has* i *only.*

3. *The Genitive plural ends in* ium ; *and the Neuter of the Nominative, Accusative and Vocative in* ia.

4. *Except Comparatives, which require* um *and* a.

E X C E P T I O N S.

1. *Dives, Hospes, Sospes, Superstes, Juvenis, Senex* and *Pauper* have *e* in the Abl. Sing. and consequently *um* in the Gen. Plur.

2. *Compos, Impos, Consors, Inops, Vigil, Supplex, Uber, Degener* and *Puber*; also Compounds ending in *ceps, fex, pes* and *corpor*; as, *Princeps, Artifex, Bipes, Tricorpor,* have *um*, not *ium.*

NOTE, That all these have seldom the Neut. Sing. and never almost the Neut. Plur. in the Nom. and Accus. To which add *Memor,* which has *memori* and *memorum,* and *Locuples,* which has *locupletium*; also, *Deses, Reses, Hebes, Perpes, Præpes, Teres, Concolor, Versicolor*; which being hardly to be met with in the Genit. Plur. 'tis a Doubt whether they should have *um* or *ium*, tho' I incline most to the former.

B   3. *Par-*

3. *Par* has *pari* ; *vetus, vetera,* & *veterum* ; *Plus* (which hath only the Neut. in the Sing.) has *plure,* and *plures, plura* (or *pluria*) *plurium.*

NOTE, 1. That Comparatives, and Adjectives in *ns,* have more frequently *e* than *i,* and Participles in the Ablatives called *Absolute* have generally *e* ; as, *Carolo regnante,* not *regnanti.*

NOTE, 2. That Adjectives joined with Substantives Neuter, hardly ever have *e* but *i,* as, *Victrici ferro,* not *victrice.*

NOTE, 3. That Adjectives when they are put substantively, have oftentimes *e* ; as, *Affinis, Familiaris, Rivalis, Sodalis,* &c. So *Par,* a Match, as, *Cum pare quæque suo coëunt.* Ovid.

Of NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

1. THE *Ordinal* and *Multiplicative* Numbers (see Chap. IX.) are regularly declined. The *Distributive* wants the Singular, as also doth the *Cardinal,* except *Unus,* which is declined as in p. 16. and hath the Plural, when joined with a Substantive that wanteth the Sing. as, *Una literæ,* one Letter ; *Una mœnia,* one Wall ; or when several Particulars are considered complexly as making one Compound ; as, *Uni sex dies, i. e.* One Space of six Days ; *Una vestimenta, i. e.* One Suit of Apparel. *Plaut.*

Duo and *tres* are declined after this Manner :

Nom.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	*Nom.*	tres,	tres,	tria,
Gen.	duorum,	duarum,	duorum,	*Gen.*	trium,	trium,	trium,
Dat.	duobus,	duabus,	duobus,	*Dat.*	tribus,	tribus,	tribus,
Acc.	duos *vel* -o,	duas,	duo,	*Acc.*	tres,	tres,	tria,
Voc.	duo,	duæ,	duo,	*Voc.*	tres,	tres,	tria,
Abl.	duobus,	duabus,	duobus,	*Abl.*	tribus,	tribus,	tribus.

Ambo, Both, is declined as *Duo.*

2. From *Quatuor* to *Centum* are all indeclinable.

3. From *Centum* to *Mille* they are declined thus, *Ducenti, ducenta, ducenta* ; *ducentorum, ducentarum, ducentorum,* &c.

4. As to *Mille, Varro,* and all the Grammarians after him, down to the last Age, make it (when it is put before a Genitive plural) a Substantive indeclinable in the Sing. and in the Plur. declined, *Millia, millium, millibus* ; but when it hath a Substantive joined to it in any other Case, they make it an Adjective plural indeclinable. But *Scioppius,* and after him *Gronovius,* contend that *Mille* is always an Adjective plural ; and under that Termination of all Cases and Genders ; but that it hath two Neuters, *hæc Mille,* and *hæc Millia,* that the first is used when one thousand is signified, and the second when more than one. And that, where it seems to be a Substantive governing a Genit. *Multitudo, Numerus, Manus, Pecunia, Pondus, Spatium, Corpus,* or the like, are understood. I own that formerly I was of this Sentiment ; but now the weighty Reasons adduced by the most accurate *Perizonius* incline me rather to follow the ancient Grammarians.

After the Declension of Substantives and Adjectives separately, it may not be improper to exercise the Learner with some Examples of a Substantive and Adjective declined together ; which will both make him more ready in the Declensions, and render the Dependence of the Adjective upon the Substantive more familiar to him. Let the Examples at first be of the same Terminations and Declensions ; as, Dominus justus, *a just Lord ;* Penna bona, *a good Pen ;* Ingenium eximium, *an excellent Wit : Afterwards let them be different in one or both ; as,* Puer probus, *a good Boy ;* Lectio facilis, *an easy Lesson ;* Poeta optimus, *an excellent Poet ;* Fructus dulcis, *sweet Fruit ;* Dies faustus, *a happy Day,* &c. *And if the Boy has as yet been taught Writing, let him write them either in the School, or at home, to be revised by the Master next Day.* Of

OF IRREGULAR NOUNS.

THESE (for we cannot here make a full Enumeration of them) may be reduced to the following Scheme.

1. Defective.

1. Substantives, Wanting.

1. Number,
   - Sing. as, *Liberi, Minæ, Arma.*
   - Plur. as, *Aer, Humus, Ævum.*

2. Cases,
   - Nom. and Voc. ⎰ Sing. as, *Ditionis.*
   - Gen. ⎱ *Chaos.*
   - Dat. ⎰ *Plus.*
   - Voc. ⎱ *Ego.*
   - Gen. Dat. and Abl. Plur. as, *Mel.*

or having only
   - Three; as, *Dica, dicam, dicas.*
   - Two; as, *Suppetiæ, Suppetias.*
   - One; as, *Dicis, Infucias, Noctu.*

2. Adjectives, Wanting.

1. Gender,
   - Masc. as, *cætera, cæterum.*
   - Fem. as, *Quisquis, quicquid.*
   - Neut. as, *Compos.*
   - Masc. and Fem. as, *Plus.*
   - Masc. and Neut. as, *Sicelis.*
   - Fem. and Neut. as, *Tros.*

2. Number,
   - Plur. as, *Unusquisque.*
   - Sing. as, *Centum.*

3. Case,
   - Voc. as, *Nullus.*
   - Dat. and Abl. as, *Tantundem.*

or having the
   - Voc. only, as, *Macte, Macti.*

2. Variable.

1. Too much,

   In Gender having Sing.
   - Masc. — Neut. as, *Mænalus, Manala.*
   - Masc. — Masc. & Neut. as, *Locus, -ci, and -ca.*
   - Fem. — Neut. as, *Carbasus, Carbasa.*
   - Neut. — Masc. as, *Cælum, cæli.*
   - Neut. — Fem. as, *Epulum, epula.*
   - Neut. — Masc. & Neut. as, *Frenum, -ni & -na.*
   (and Plur.)

   In Declension being of the
   - 2. and 1. as, *Delitium, delicia.*
   - 2. and 4. as, *Laurus, -ri, and -rus.*
   - 3. and 2. as, *Vas, -sis; -sa, -sorum.*

2. Too little, as, *Inde-clinables,*
   - altogether; as, *Fas.*
   - in the Sing. as, *Cornu.*

3. Redundant.

In Termination
   - only; as, *Helena, Helene.*
   - and Gender; as, *Tignus, tignum.*
   - and Decl. as, *Materia, materies.*
   - Gend. and Decl. as, *Æther, æthra.*

In Gender
   - only; as, *hic & hoc Vulgus.*

In Declension
   - only; as, *Fames, famis,* of the 3d, Abl. *fame,* of the 5th, because the last Syllable is always long with the Poets.

B 2   NOTE,

Note, 1. That the *Defective* Nouns are not so numerous as is commonly believed.

Note, 2. That these which *vary too little*, may be ranked under the *Defective*; and these which *vary too much*, under the *Redundant*, E. G. *Cæli, Cælorum*, comes not from *Cælum*, but from *Cælus*; and *Vasa, Vasorum*, not from *vas, vasis*, but from *vasum, vasi*: But Custom, which alone gives Laws to all Languages, has dropt the Singular, and retained the Plural; and so of others.

De Comparatione.

M. QUOT sunt Gradus Comparationis?

D. Tres; *Positivus, Comparativus* & *Superlativus*.

M. Quotæ Declinationis sunt hi gradus?

D. Positivus est Adjectivum Primæ & Secundæ Declinationis, vel Tertiæ tantum; Comparativus est semper Tertiæ; Superlativus semper Primæ & Secundæ.

M. Unde formatur Comparativus gradus?

D. A proximo casu Positivi in *i*, addendo pro masculino & fœminino syllabam *or*, & *us* pro neutro; ut,

Doctus, learned, Gen. *docti, doctior* & *doctius*, more learned; *Mitis*, meek, Dat. *miti, mitior* & *mitius*, more meek.

M. Unde formatur Superlativus?

D. 1. Si Positivus desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur addendo *rimus*; ut,

Pulcher, fair, *pulcherrimus*, *perrimus* most poor.

2. Si Positivus non desinat in *er*, Superlativus formatur à proximo casu in *i*, addendo *ssimus*; ut,

Of Comparison.

M. HOW many Degrees of Comparison are there?

S. Three; the Positive, Comparative and Superlative.

M. Of what Declension are these Degrees?

S. The Positive is an Adjective of the First and Second Declension, or Third only; the Comparative is always of the Third; the Superlative always of the First and Second.

M. Whence is the Comparative Degree formed?

S. From the next Case of the Positive in i, by adding for the Masculine and Feminine the Syllable or, and us for the Neuter; as,

more learned; more meek.

M. Whence is the Superlative formed?

S. 1. If the Positive ends in er, the Superlative is formed by adding rimus; as,

most fair; *Pauper*, poor, *pauperrimus* most poor.

2. If the Positive ends not in er, the Superlative is formed from the next Case in i, by adding ssimus; as,

Gen.

Gen. *Docti, doctissimus,* most learned : Dat. *Miti mitissimus,* most meek.

By Grammatical COMPARISON we understand three Adjective Nouns of which the two last are formed from the first, and import Comparison with it, that is, heightening or lessening of its Signification.

Consequently these Adjectives only which are capable of having their Signification increased or diminished, can be compared.

The POSITIVE signifies the Quality of a Thing simply and absolutely; as, *Durus,* hard; *Parvus,* little.

The COMPARATIVE heightens or lessens that Quality; as, *Durior,* harder; *Minor,* less.

The SUPERLATIVE heightens or lessens it to a very high, or very low Degree; as, *Durissimus,* hardest, *or* most hard ; *Minimus,* very little, *or* least.

The Positive hath various Terminations; the Comparative ends always in *or* and *us*; the Superlative always in *mus, ma, mum.*

[† *The Positive, properly speaking, is no Degree of Comparison, for it does not compare Things together: However it is accounted one, because the other two are founded upon, and formed from it.*]

The SIGN of the Comparative in our Language is the Syllable *er* added to an Adjective, or the Word *more* put before it.

The SIGN of the Superlative is the Syllable *est* added to an Adjective, or the Words *very* or *most* put before it.

NOTE, That when the Positive is a long Word, or would otherwise fo harsh by having *er* or *est* added to it, we commonly make the Comparat by the Word *more,* and the Superlative by *most* or *very* put before it.

And for the like Reason, the Latin Comparative is sometimes made by *Magis,* and the Superlative by *Valde* or *Maxime,* put before the Positive. And these are particularly used, when the Positive ends in *us* with a Vowel before it; as, *Pius,* godly; *Arduus,* high; *Idoneus,* fit; tho' not always.

IRREGULAR COMPARISONS.

1. Bonus,	melior,	optimus :	*Good,*	*better,*	*best.*
Malus,	pejor,	pessimus :	*Evil,*	*worse,*	*worst.*
Magnus,	major,	maximus :	*Great,*	*greater,*	*greatest.*
Parvus,	minor,	minimus :	*Little,*	*less,*	*least.*

Multus, plurimus ; multa, plurima ; multum, plus, plurimum: *much, more, most.*

2. Facilis, *easy*; Humilis, *low*; Similis, *like*; make their Superlative by changing *is* into *limus*; thus, *facillimus, humillimus, simillimus.*

3. *Exter,* outward; *Citer,* hither ; *Superus,* above; *Inferus,* below ; *Posterus,* behind, have regular Comparatives ; but their Superlatives are, *extremus* (or *extimus,*) uttermost ; *citimus,* hithermost ; *supremus,* (or *summus,*) uppermost, highest, last ; *infimus* (or *imus,*) lowest ; *postremus* (or *postumus,*) latest, or last.

4. Compounds in *Dicus, Loquus, Ficus* and *Volus,* have *entior* and *entissimus*; as, *Maledicus,* one that raileth ; *Magniloquus,* one that boasteth; *Beneficus,* Beneficent ; *Malevolus,* Malevolent. But these seem rather to come from Participles or Nouns in *ens.* Besides the Comparatives and Superlatives of Adjectives derived from *Loquor* and *Facio,* are very rare ; and *Terence* has *Mirificissimus,* and *Plautus* has *Mendaciloquius.*

5. *Prior,* former, has *Primus,* first ; *Ulterior,* farther, *Ultimus,* farthest or last ; *Propior,* nearer, *Proximus,* nearest or next : *Ocior,* swifter, *Ocissi-*

mus,

mus, swiftest; their Positives being out of use, or quite wanting. Proximus has also another Comparative formed from it, *viz. Proximior*.

6. There are also a great many other Adjectives capable of having their Signification increased, which yet want one, or more of these Degrees of Comparison; as, *Albus*, white, without Compar. and Superl. *Ingens*, great, *Ingentior*, greater, without the Superl. *Sacer*, holy, *Sacerrimus*, most holy; without the Comp. *Anterior*, former, without Posit. and Superl.

¶ *These three Degrees of Comparison being nothing else but three distinct Adjectives, may be declined either severally each by itself, or jointly together; Respect still being had to their Declensions. But the first Way is much easier, and will answer all the Purposes of Comparison as well as the other.*

CAP. II.
De Pronomine.

M. QUOT sunt Pronomina † simplicia?

D. Octodecim; *Ego, Tu*, ..i; *Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is*, ..uis, Qui; *Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras & Cujas.*

¶ Ex his tria sunt Substantiva, *Ego, Tu, Sui*; reliqua quindecim sunt Adjectiva.

CHAP. II.
Of Pronoun.

M. HOW many simple Pronouns are there?

S. Eighteen; Ego, Tu, Sui, Ille, Ipse, Iste, Hic, Is, Quis, Qui; Meus, Tuus, Suus, Noster, Vester; Nostras, Vestras & Cujas.

¶ *Of these three are Substantives, Ego, Tu, Sui; the other Fifteen are Adjectives.*

Ego, I.

	Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	ego, *I,*		Nom.	nos, *we,*	
Gen.	mei, *of me,*		Gen.	nostrum *vel* nostri, *of us,*	
Dat.	mihi, *to me,*		Dat.	nobis, *to us,*	
Acc.	me, *me,*		Acc.	nos, *us,*	
Voc.	——		Voc.	——	
Abl.	me, *with me :*		Abl.	nobis, *with us.*	

Tu, Thou.

	Sing.			Plur.	
N.	tu, *thou,*		N.	vos, *ye* [you]	
G.	tui, *of thee,*		G.	vestrum *vel* vestri, *of you,*	
D.	tibi, *to thee,*	or you	D.	vobis, *to you,*	
A.	te, *thee,*		A.	vos, *you,*	
V.	tu, *O thou,*		V.	vos, *O ye* [you]	
A.	te, *with thee:*		A.	vobis, *with you.*	

Sui,

† See Chap. IX.

Sui, *of himself, of herself, of itself.*

	Sing.			Plur.
N. ———		N. ———		
G. sui, *of himself,* &c.		G. sui, *of themselves,*		
D. sibi, *to himself,*		D. sibi, *to themselves,*		
A. se, *himself,*		A. se, *themselves,*		
V. ———		V. ———		
A. se, *with himself,*		A. se, *with themselves.*		

A PRONOUN is an irregular kind of Noun: Or, it is a Part of Speech which has Respect to, and supplies the Place of a Noun; as, instead of your Name, I say, *Tu,* Thou *or* You; instead of *Jacobus fecit,* James did it, I say, *Ille fecit,* He did it, *viz.* James.

NOTE, 1. That the Dat. *Mihi* is sometimes by the Poets contracted into *Mi.*

NOTE, 2. That of old the Gen. Plur. of *Ego* was *Nostrorum* and *Nostrarum;* of *Tu, Vestrorum* and *Vestrarum* (of which there are several Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*) which were afterwards contracted into *Nostrum* and *Vestrum.*

NOTE, 3. That we use *Nostrum* and *Vestrum* after Numerals, Partitives, Comparatives and Superlatives, and *Nostri* and *Vestri* after other Nouns, and Verbs; tho' there want not some Examples of these last with *Nostrum* and *Vestrum,* even in *Cicero* himself, as *Vossius* shews.

Ille, illa, illud, *He, she, that* or *it.*

Sing.			Plur.		
N. ille,	illa,	illud,	N. illi,	illæ,	illa,
G. illius,	illius,	illius,	G. illorum,	illarum,	illorum,
D. illi,	illi,	illi,	D. illis,	illis,	illis,
A. illum,	illam,	illud,	A. illos,	illas,	illa,
V. ille,	illa,	illud,	V. illi,	illæ,	illa,
A. illo,	illa,	illo:	A. illis,	illis,	illis.

Ipse, ipsa, ipsum, *He himself, she herself, itself,* and iste, ista, istud, *he, she, that,* are declined as *ille,* save only that *ipse* hath *ipsum* in the Nom. Acc. and Voc. Sing. Neuter.

Hic, hæc, hoc, *This.*

Sing.			Plur.		
N. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	N. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
G. hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	G. horum,	harum,	horum,
D. huic,	huic,	huic,	D. his,	his,	his,
A. hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	A. hos,	has,	hæc,
V. hic,	hæc,	hoc,	V. hi,	hæ,	hæc,
A. hoc,	hac,	hoc:	A. his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id, *He, she, it,* or *that.*

Sing.			Plur.		
N. is,	ea,	id,	N. ii,	eæ,	ea,
G. ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	G. eorum,	earum,	eorum,
D. ei,	ei,	ei,	D. iis *vel* eis,		
A. eum,	eam,	id,	A. eos,	eas,	ea,
V. ——	——	——	V. ——		
A. eo,	ea,	eo:	A. iis *vel* eis.		

B 4

Quis,

Quis, quæ, quod *vel* quid, *Who, which, what?*

	Sing.			Plur.	
N. quis,	quæ,	quod *vel* quid,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus,	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis *vel* quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod *vel* quid,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——	V. ——	——	——
A. quo,	qua,	quo :	A. queis *vel* quibus.		

Qui, quæ, quod, *Who, which, that.*

	Sing.			Plur.	
N. qui,	quæ,	quod,	N. qui,	quæ,	quæ,
G. cujus	cujus,	cujus,	G. quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
D. cui,	cui,	cui,	D. queis *vel* quibus,		
A. quem,	quam,	quod,	A. quos,	quas,	quæ,
V. ——	——	——	V. ——	——	——
A. quo,	qua,	quo :	A. queis *vel* quibus.		

Meus, my, *or* mine; *Tuus*, thy, *or* thine; *Suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *Bonus*, *-a*, *-um*: And *Noster*, our, *or* ours; *Vester*, your *or* yours, like *Pulcher*, *-chra*, *-chrum*, of the First and Second Declension. But *Tuus*, *Suus* and *Vester* want the Vocative; *Noster* and *Meus* have it, in which this last hath *mi*, (and sometimes *meus*) in the Masc. Sing.

Nostras, of our Country; *Vestras*, of your Country; *Cujas*, of what *or* which Country, are declined like *Felix*, of the Third Declension, Gen. *nostratis*, Dat. *nostrati*, &c.

NOTE, I. That all Nouns and Pronouns which one cannot call upon, or address himself unto, want the Vocative. In consequence of which Rule many Nouns, as, *Nullus*, *Nemo*, *Qualis*, *Quantus*, *Quot*, &c. and several Pronouns, as, *Ego*, *Sui*, *Quis*, &c. want the Vocative; but not so many either of the one or the other, as is commonly taught. For which Reason we have given Vocatives to *Ille*, *Ipse*, *Hic* and *Idem*, therein following the Judgment of the great *Vossius*, Messieurs *de Port Royal* and *Johnson*, which they support by the following Authorities:

Esto nunc, Sol, testis, & hæc mihi terra precantı. Virg. Æn. 12.

Tu mihi libertas illa paterna veni. Tibul. lib. 2. El. 4.

O nox illa, quæ pene æternas huic urbi tenebras attulisti. Cic. pro Flacc.

Ipse meas æther accipe summe preces. Ovid in Ibin.

And the Vocative of *Idem* seems to be confirmed by that of Ovid. Met. 15.

———————— *Quique fuisti*

Hippolytus, dixit, nunc idem Virbius esto.

Though all Authors before them will only allow four Pronouns, *viz. Tu, Meus, Noster* and *Nostras*, to have the Vocative.

NOTE, 2. That *Qui* is sometimes used for *Quis*; as, Cic. *Qui tantus fuit labor?* Ter. *Qui erit rumor populi, si id feceris?*

NOTE,

Note, 3. That *Quod* with its Compounds, *Aliquod, Quodvis, Quod-dam*, &c. are used when they agree with a Substantive in the same Case; *Quid*, with its Compounds, *Aliquid, Quidvis, Quiddam*, &c. either have no Substantive exprest, or govern one in the Genitive: Whence it is that these last are commonly reckoned Substantives. But that *quid* as well as *quod* is originally an Adjective, its Signification plainly shews; otherwise we shall make *Multum, Plus, Tantum, Quantum*, &c. also Substantives, when they govern the Genitive; which yet most Grammarians agree to be Adjectives, having the common Word *Negotium* understood.

Note, 4. That *Qui* the Relative hath oftimes *qui* in the Ablative, and that (which is remarkable) in all Genders and Numbers, as Mr. *John-son* evinces by a great many Examples out of *Plautus* and *Terence*; to which he might have added one out of *C. Nepos*, III. 3.

Note, 5. That *Nostras, Vestras* and *Cujas*, are declined like *Gentile* or *National* Nouns in *as* of the Third Decl. in Imitation of which they are formed; as, *Arpinas, Fidenas, Privernas*, a Man, Woman *or* Thing, of or belonging to the Town of *Arpinum, Fidenæ* or *Privernum*, and may have the Neut. as well as these: (For as *Cic.* has *Iter Arpinas*, and *Liv. Bellum Privernas*; so *Colum.* has *Arbustum nostras*, and *Cic. Nostratia verba*) contrary to what *Linacer* teaches.

[*I pass over taking notice, that in old Authors, especially* Plautus, *we find* quis *and* quisquis *sometimes of the Femin. Gender*; mis *and* tis *for* mei *and* tui; hisce *for* hi; hibus, ibus, *for* his, iis; illæ, ipsæ, istæ, quæ *in the Gen. or Dat. Sing. Fem.* em *for* eum; istes *for* istos; quoius, quoi, *for* cujus, cui; *because they are extraordinary*.]

Of COMPOUND PRONOUNS.

I. Some are compounded of *Quis* and *Qui*, with some other Word or Syllable. In these *Quis* is sometimes the first, and sometimes the last Part of the Word compounded; but *Qui* is always the first.

1. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put first, are *Quisnam*, who? *Quispiam, Quisquam*, any one; *Quisque*, every one; *Quisquis*, whosoever: Which are thus declined,

Nom.			Gen.	Dat.
Quisnam,	quænam,	quodnam *vel* quidnam;	cujusnam,	cuinam,
Quispiam,	quæpiam,	quodpiam *vel* quidpiam;	cujuspiam,	cuipiam,
Quisquam,	quæquam,	quodquam *vel* quidquam;	cujusquam,	cuiquam,
Quisque,	quæque,	quodque *vel* quidque,	cujusque,	cuique,
Quisquis,	- - -	quidquid *vel* quicquid;	cujuscujus,	cuicui.

And so forth in their other Cases, according to the simple *Quis.* But *Quisquis* has no Feminine at all, and the Neuter only in the Nominat. and Accus. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam.* Acc. *quenquam*, without the Fem. The Plural is scarcely used.

2. The Compounds of *Quis*, when it is put last, are *Aliquis*, some; *Ecquis*, who? To which some add *Nequis, Siquis* and *Numquis*; but these are more frequently read separately, *ne quis, si quis, num quis.* They are thus declined,

Nom.		Gen.	Dat.
Aliquis,	aliqua, aliquod *vel* aliquid,	alicujus,	alicui,
Ecquis,	ecqua *vel* ecquæ, ecquod *vel* ecquid,	eccujus,	eccui,
Si quis,	si qua, si quod *vel* si quid,	si cujus,	si cui,
Ne quis,	ne qua, ne quod *vel* ne quid,	ne cujus,	ne cui,
Num quis,	num qua, num quod *vel* num quid,	num cujus,	num cui.

Note, That these, and only these, have *qua* in the Nom. Sing. Fem. and Nom. and Accus. Plur. Neut.

3. The

3. The Compounds of *Qui* are *Quicunque*, whofoever; *Quidam*, fome; *Quilibet*, *Quivis*, any one, whom you pleafe; and are thus declined,

Nom.	Gen.	Dat.
Quicunque, quæcunque, quodcunque;	cujufcunque,	cuicunque.
Quidam, quædam, quoddam *vel* quiddam;	cujufdam,	cuidam.
Quilibet, quælibet, quodlibet *vel* quidlibet;	cujuflibet,	cuilibet.
Quivis, quævis, quodvis *vel* quidvis;	cujuvis,	cuivis.

Some of thefe are twice compounded; as, *Ecquifnam*, Who? *Unuf-quifque*, Every one. The firft is fcarce declined beyond its Nom. and the fecond wants the Plur.

NOTE, 1. That all thefe Compounds want the Vocative, except *Quifque*, *Aliquis*, *Quilibet*, *Unufquifque*, and perhaps fome others. *Vid. Voff.* p. 335.

NOTE, 2. That all thefe Compounds have feldom or never *queis*, but *quibus* in their Dat. and Abl. Plur.

NOTE, 3. That *Quidam* hath *quendam*, *quandam*, *quoddam* vel *quiddam* in the Accuf. Sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam* in the Genit. Plur. *n* being put inftead of *m* for the better Sound, as it is for the fame Reafon in thefe Cafes of *Idem*.

II. Some reckon among compound Pronouns *Ego*, *Tu* and *Sui*, with *Ipfe*; but in the beft Books they are generally read feparately; which feems necef-fary, becaufe of *te ipfe* and *fe ipfe*, where the two Words are of different Cafes.

III. *Is* is compounded with the Syllable *dem*, and contracted into *I-dem*, the fame, which is thus declined,

		Sing.			Plur.	
Nom.	Idem,	eadem, idem,	Nom.	iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
Gen.	ejufdem,	ejufdem, ejufdem,	Gen.	eorundem,	earundem,	eorundem,
Dat.	eidem,	eidem, eidem,	Dat.	eifdem *vel* iifdem,		
Acc.	eundem,	eandem, idem,	Acc.	eofdem,	eafdem,	eadem,
Voc.	idem	eadem, idem,	Voc.	iidem,	eædem,	eadem,
Abl.	eodem,	eadem, eodem:	Abl.	eifdem *vel* iifdem.		

IV. Moft of the other compound Pronouns are only to be found in certain Cafes and Genders; as,

1. Of *ifte* and *hic* is compounded Nom. *Ifthic*, *ifthæc*, *ifthoc* vel *ifthuc*. Acc. *Ifthunc*, *ifthanc*, *ifthoc* vel *ifthuc*. Abl. *Ifthoc*, *ifthac*, *ifthoc*. Nom. and Acc. Plur. Neut. *ifthæc*.

2. Of *Ecce* and *Is* is compounded *Eccum*, *eccam*; Plur. *eccos*, *eccas*: And from *Ecce* and *Ille*, *Ellum*, *ellam*; *ellos*, *ellas*, in the Accufatives.

3. Of *Modus* and *is*, *hic*, *ifte* and *quis*, are compounded thefe Genitives, *Ejufmodi*, *hujufmodi*, *iftiufmodi*, *cujufmodi*; and fometimes with the Syl-lable *ce*, put in the Middle, *ejufcemodi*, *hujufcemodi*, &c.

4. Of *cum* and thefe Ablatives, *me*, *te*, *fe*, *nobis*, *vobis*, *qui* or *quo*, and *quibus*, are compounded *mecum*, *tecum*, *fecum*, *nobifcum*, *vobifcum*, *quicum* or *quocum*, and *quibufcum*.

5. To thefe add fome Pronouns compounded with thefe fyllabical Ad-jections, *met*, *te*, *fe*, *pte*, *cine*, to make their Signification more pointed, and emphatical, as, *egomet*, *tute*, *hujufce*, *meapte*, *hiccine*.

REMARKS on ENGLISH PRONOUNS.

1. In the Nominative, or *Foregoing State* (as the *Englifh* Grammarians call it) we ufe, *I, Thou, He, She, We, Ye, They*, and *Who*: But in the o-ther Cafes (which they name the *Following State*) we ufe *Me, Thee, Him, Her, Us, You, Them* and *Whom*. 2. When

Part II. Chap. III. of Verb. 27

2. When we speak of a *Person*, we use *Who* and *Whom*, whether we ask a Question or not; as, *Who did it? The Man who did it.* But if we speak of a *Thing* with a Question, we use *What?* as, *What Book is that?* Without a Question we use *Which*; as, *The Book which you gave me.* And then it is frequently understood; as, *The Book you gave me.*

NOTE, That *What* is often used, even without a Question, instead of *The Thing which*, or *That which*; as, *I know what you design,* i. e. *The Thing which*, or *that which* you design. As, on the contrary, when it refers to some particular Thing mentioned before, we make use of *which*, even with a Question; as, *Give me the Book. Which Book? Which of the Books?*

3. *This* makes in the Plural *These*, and *That* makes *Those*.

NOTE, That *That* is frequently used instead of *Who, Whom* or *Which*; as, *The Man that told you, The Man that we saw, The Book that I lent you.*

4. We use *My, Thy, Her, Our, Your, Their,* when they are joined with Substantives, or the Word *Own*; and *Mine, Thine, Hers, Ours, Yours, Theirs,* when the Substantive is left out or understood; as, *My Book, This Book is mine,* &c.

NOTE, That with *Own*, or a Substantive beginning with a Vowel, we sometimes use *Mine* and *Thine*; as, *My Eye,* or *Mine Eye; Thy own,* or *Thine own.*

5. We often use *Here, There, Where,* compounded with these Particles, *Of, By, Upon, About, In, With,* instead of *This, That, Which* and *What,* with these same Particles; as, *Hereof, Hereby, Hereupon, Hereabouts, Herein, Herewith;* for *Of this, By this, Upon this, About this Place, In this, With this,* &c.

6. *Whose* and *Its* are Genitives, instead of, *Of whom, Of it*; and it is a Fault to use *Its* for *'Tis* or *It is,* as some do.

CAP. III.	**CHAP. III.**
De Verbo.	Of Verb.
M. **Q**Uomodo declinatur Verbum ?	M. **H**OW is a Verb declined ?
D. Per Voces, Modos, Tempora, Numeros & Personas.	S. *By Voices, Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons.*
M. Quot sunt Voces ?	M. *How many Voices are there ?*
D. Duæ; *Activa* & *Passiva.*	S. *Two; the* Active *and* Passive.
M. Quot sunt Modi ?	M. *How many Moods are there ?*
D. Quatuor ; *Indicativus, Subjunctivus, Imperativus* & *Infinitivus.*	S. *Four ;* Indicative, Subjunctive, Imperative *and* Infinitive.
M. Quot sunt Numeri ?	M. *How many Numbers are there ?*
	D. Duo;

D. Duo; *Singularis & Plu-ralis.*	S. *Two*; Singular *and* Plural.
M. Quot sunt tempora?	M. *How many Tenses are there?*
D. Quinque; *Præsens, Præteritum-imperfectum, Præteritum-perfectum, Præteritum-plusquamperfectum & Futurum.*	S. *Five*; the Present, the Preter-imperfect, the Preter-perfect, the Preter-pluperfect and the Future.
M. Quot sunt Personæ?	M. *How many Persons are there?*
D. Tres; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia.*	S. *Three*; First, Second, Third.

A VERB is *a Part of Speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.* Or, *a Verb is that Part of Speech which expresses what is affirmed or said of Things.*

A Verb may be distinguished from any other Part of Speech these two Ways. 1. A Verb being the most necessary and essential Part of a Sentence, without which it cannot subsist, whatever Word with a Substantive Noun makes full Sense, or a Sentence, is a Verb; and that which does not make full Sense with it, is not a Verb. 2. Whatever Word with HE or IT SHALL before it makes Sense, is a Verb, otherwise not.

I. In most Verbs there are two Forms or VOICES, the ACTIVE ending in *o,* and the PASSIVE in *or.* The former expresses what is done by the Nominative or Person before it: The latter what is suffered by, or done to the Nominative or Person before it; as, *Amo,* I love; *Amor,* I am loved.

II. The Moods are divided into *Finite* and *Infinite.* The first three, viz. the *Indicative, Subjunctive* and *Imperative,* are called FINITE, because they have certain fixt Terminations answering to certain Persons both singular and plural. The last is called INFINITIVE or INFINITE, because it is not confined to one Number or Person more than another.

1. The INDICATIVE Mood affirms or denies positively; as, *Amo,* I love; *Non amo,* I do not love: Or else asks a Question; as, *An amas?* Dost thou love? *Annon amas?* Dost thou not love?

2. The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood generally depends upon another Verb in the same Sentence, either going before or coming after, as, *Si me a-metis, præcepta mea servate,* If ye love me, keep my Commandments.

[*This Mood is commonly branched out into three Moods, viz. the* Optative, *the Subjunctive more strictly taken, and the* Potential. 1. *It is called* OPTATIVE, *when a Word importing a* Wish; *as,* Utinam, *Would to God,* O si, *O if, goes before it.* 2. *It is named* SUBJUNCTIVE, *when it is subjoined to some other Conjunction or Adverb, or to Interrogatives becoming Indefinites.* (See Chap. IX.) 3. *It is called* POTENTIAL, *when with the simple Affirmation of the Verb is also signified some Modification or Affection of it, such as a* Power, Possibility, Liberty, Duty, Will, *&c. The Signs whereof in our Language are,* May, Can, Might, Could, Would, Should *and* Had, (*for* Would have *or* Should have; *as,* They had repented, *for would have.*) *But because the Terminations of these Moods are the same, we have comprehended them all under one, viz. the* Subjunctive, *to which with small Difficulty they*

they may be reduced. Otherwise, if we will constitute as many Moods as there are various Modifications wherewith a Verb or Affirmation can be affected, we must multiply them to a far greater Number, and so we shall have a Promissive, Hortative, Precative, Concessive, Mandative, Interrogative Mood; nay a Volitive and Debitive, which is commonly included in the Potential. As for the Optative, 'tis plain that the *Wish* is not in the Verb itself, (which signifies only the Matter of it, or what is wished) but in the Verb Opto, which is understood, with ut, uti or utinam, which really signify no more but That. And 'tis very probable that in like Manner some Verb, or other Word, may also be understood to what is called the Potential Mood, such as Ita est, Res ita est, Fieri potest ut, &c. as Vossius, Sanctius, Perizonius, and others do contend; tho' Mr. Johnson is of another Opinion.]

3. The IMPERATIVE Mood commands, exhorts or intreats; as, Ama, Love thou.

4. The INFINITIVE Mood expresses the Signification of the Verb in general, and is Englished by TO; as, Amare, To love.

III. The T E N S E S are either *Simple* or *Compound*. The SIMPLE Tenses are the *Present*, the *Preter-perfect* and *Future*.

1. The PRESENT
2. The PRETER-PERFECT } Tense speaks of Time now { Present. Past.
3. The FUTURE { To come.

The COMPOUND Tenses are the *Preter-imperfect*, and the *Preter-pluperfect*.

4. The PRETER-IMPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was present and unfinished then; as, Amabam, I did love [viz. then.]

5. The PRETER-PLUPERFECT refers to some past Time, and imports that the Thing was past at or before that Time; as, Scripseram epistolam, I had written a Letter, [i. e. before that Time.]

There is also a Compound Future Tense, called the FUTURE-PERFECT, or EXACT, which refers to some Time yet to come, and imports that a Thing as yet future shall be past and finished at or before that Time; as, Cum cœnavero tu leges, When I shall have supped, [i. e. after Supper] you shall read. This Future is only in the Subjunctive Mood, and the Sign of it is *Shall have*; as the other Future, called the FUTURE-IMPERFECT, is only in the Indicative, which, when joined with another Future, imports that two Things yet future shall be contemporary, or exist at one Time; as, Cum cœnabo tu leges, When I shall sup, [i. e. in Time of Supper] you shall read.

[And not only the Tenses, but even the MOODS themselves may be divided into SIMPLE and COMPOUND. I call the Indicative a simple Mood, because it simply affirms something of its Person or Nominative. But the other three Moods I call Compound, because they have some other Ideas or Modifications of our Thoughts superadded to the simple Signification of the Verb; such as, a Command, a Desire, Prohibition, Possibility, Liberty, Will, Duty, Wish, Concession, Supposition, Condition, Purpose, &c. These Modifications are either really included in the Verb; as, a Command, &c. in the Imperative, and according to Johnson, Power, Will, Duty, &c. in the Mood called Potential; or closely interwoven with it by the Help of a Conjunction, Adverb or other Verb, exprest or understood: And because these also generally connote Time, they

they very frequently make all the Tenses of these Moods to become Compound Tenses. For, with respect to their Execution, they are generally future; but with respect to their Modal Signification, they may fall under any of the other Distinctions of Time as well as the Future. Thus, for Instance, Lege, Read thou, with respect to its Execution, is future, but with respect to the Command, it is present. Again in Legam, I may or can read, the Action (if done at all) must be future, but the Liberty or Possibility are present; and so of others. Now, as it seems evident that from these Modifications of the Verb, more than from the bare Execution of it, the Tenses of these Moods have at first been distinguished; so I am of Opinion, that had Grammarians taken their Measures accordingly, they had not rendered this Matter so intricate as they have done. For some of them, as Sanctius. &c. determining the Times of these Moods by the Execution only, have made the whole Imperative and Subjunctive of the future Time, and the Infinitive and Participles of all Times, or rather of no Time: Others, viz. Vossius, Linacer, Alvarus, Verepæus, &c. tho' they will not go so far as Sanctius, yet upon the same Grounds make Utinam legam the Future of the Optative; Utinam legerem the Present of it. By the same Rule, they make a Future of the Potential in RIM; as, Citius crediderim, I should or shall sooner believe: And another of the Subjunctive in ISSEM; as, Juravit se illum statim interfecturum, nisi jusjurandum sibi dedisset; He swore he would presently kill him, if he should not swear to him, Cic. But, with all imaginable Deference to these great Men, I humbly think that these Tenses may be more easily accounted for, if we consider them as Compound, i. e. respecting one Time as to their Execution, and another as to the various Modifications, supperadded to, or involved in their Signification. To instance in the two last Examples, (because they seem to have the greatest Difficulty) Citius crediderim seems to import these two Things, 1st, That I have and continue to have a Reason why I should not believe it; which Reason is of the Imperfect or past Time. And 2dly, That I shall sooner have believed it, than another Thing, with respect to which it shall be past. For there are a great many Examples where the Preterite in RIM hath the same Signification with the Future-perfect in RO; as, Si te inde exemerim, Terent. for exemero. See Voss. lib. v. cap. 15. and Aul. Gell. lib. xviii. cap. 2. As to the other Example, the Composition of two Times is yet more evident; for tho' jusjurandum dedisset be posterior, and consequently future with respect to Juravit, yet it is prior, not only to the Time of the Relation, but to interfecturum, to prevent which it behoved it necessarily to be past; and so of others. The same Rule in my Opinion will likewise hold in the Infinitive and Participles, which of themselves have always one fixed Time; and when they seem to be of another Time, that is not in them, but in the Verb that goes before them, or comes after them. Thus, for Instance, Scribere is always present, or co-existent with the Verb before it; and Scripsisse is always prior to the same Verb in all its Tenses; as, Dicit, dixit, or dicet; juvat, juvit or juvabit Me scribere and Me scripsisse. So also the Participles have a fixt Time, present, past or future; and when any Part of the Verb Sum is joined with them, they retain their own Times, and have these of that Verb supperadded to them. But because there are innumerable Occasions of Speaking, wherein the nice Distinctions of Times are not necessary, therefore it frequently happens that they are promiscuously used: As I could evince by a great many Examples, not only in the Passive, but Active Voice, both in the Latin and other Languages, if there were Place for it. Which yet, in my Judgment, does not hinder but that every Part of a Verb hath formally, and of its own Nature a certain Time simple or compound, to which it is fixed and determined.]

IV. There

IV. There are two NUMBERS, the SINGULAR and the PLURAL, anfwering to the fame Numbers of a Noun or Pronoun.

V. There are three PERSONS in each Number; The FIRST fpeaks of itfelf, the SECOND is fpoken to, and the THIRD is fpoken of. The *Firft* hath only EGO and NOS, the *Second* only TU and VOS, and the *Third* any Subftantive Noun fingular and plural, put before the refpective Terminations of the Verb, anfwering to them through all Voices, Moods and Tenfes.

[*A Verb hath the fame Refpect to its Nominative that an Adjective hath to its Subftantive; and therefore, as an Adjective hath not properly either Genders or Numbers, but certain Terminations fitted for thefe of its Subftantive, fo a Verb hath properly neither Perfons nor Numbers, but certain Terminations anfwering to the Perfons and Numbers of its Nominative.*

NOTE, 1. That *Ego* and *Tu* are feldom expreft, becaufe the Terminations of the Verb immediately difcover them, without any Hazard of a Miftake.

NOTE, 2. That if a Subftantive Noun be joined with *Ego* or *Tu*, the Verb is of the Perfon of thefe Pronouns, not of the Noun.

NOTE, 3. That in the Continuation of a Difcourfe, the third Perfon is alfo frequently underftood, becaufe eafily known by what went before; and thefe Pronouns, *Ille, ipfe, ifte, hic, is, idem, quis* and *qui*, do often fupply the Place of it.

The ENGLISH SIGNS of the TENSES are,

Prefent { Act. The Theme of the Verb, and *eft, eth*, or *s*; or for the greater Emphafis, *do, doft, doth*, or *does* before it.
Paff. *am, art, is, are, be, beeft*, with a Word in *ed, en, t,* &c.

Imper. { Act. *ed, edft,* &c. or for the greater Emphafis, *did, didft*, before it.
Paff. *was, waft, were, wert*, with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

Perfect { Act. *have, haft, hath* or *has*, with a Word in *ed, en,* &c. or as the Imp.
Paff. *have been, haft been, hath* or *has been*, with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

Pluper. { Act. *had, hadft*, with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.
Paff. *had been, hadft been*, with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

Future { Act. *fhall, will, fhalt, wilt*, with the Verb.
Paff. *fhall be, will be, fhalt be, wilt be*, with a Word in *ed, en,* &c.

The *Subjunctive* Mood active has frequently thefe Signs,

Prefent, *may* or *can.*

Imperf. *might, could, would, fhould.*

Perfect, *might have, could have, would have, fhould have* or *had.*

Pluperf. *may have,* or *might have, could have, would have, fhould have.*

Future, *fhall have.*

The *Paffive* has frequently the fame Signs with *be* or *been.*

De Conjugationibus.	Of Conjugations.
M. QUOT funt Conjugationes?	M. HOW many Conjugations are there?
D. Quatuor; *Prima, Secunda, Tertia* & *Quarta.*	S. *Four*; Firft, Second, Third and Fourth.
M. Quæ funt Notæ harum Conjugationum?	M. *What are the Marks of thefe Conjugations?*
	D. Prima

D.				S.		
Prima	} habet	A longum	} ante re Infinitivi.	First	} hath	A long	} before re of the Infinitive.
Secunda		E longum		Second		E long	
Tertia		E breve		Third		E short	
Quarta		I longum		Fourth		I long	

The common *Characteristick* or MARK by which these Conjugations are distinguished from one another, is one of these three Vowels, A, E, I, before the RE of the Infinitive Active, tho' they also may be known by the same Vowels in several other Parts of them; for *A* long is most frequent in the First, *E* long in the Second, *E* or *I* short in the Third, and *I* long in the Fourth: Only *E* before *bam, bas, bat,* &c. and before *mus* and *tis*; and *mur* and *mini*, is always long in whatever Conjugation it is found.

But it is to be observed that the *Preterites* and *Supines*, and all the Parts formed from them (because of the great Irregularity of their middle Syllables, and constant Agreement in their last Vowel, and in the Terminations arising from it, in all Conjugations) cannot properly be said to be of any one Conjugation more than another; for there is nothing, for Example, in *Fricui, Docui, Elicui, Amicui,* or in *Frictum, Doctum, Elicitum, Amictum,* or in the Parts that come from them, whereby to distinguish their Conjugations.

Prima Conjugatio. — The First Conjugation.

AMO. — *To love.*

Vox Activa. — *The Active Voice.*

Præcipua Partes. — The Principal Parts.

Præf. Indic.	Perfect.	Sup.	Præf. Infin.
Am-o,	am-avi,	am-atum,	am-are.

INDICATIVUS Modus. — The INDICATIVE Mood.

Præsens. — The Present.

Sing.
1 AM-o, — I Love, or *do love,*
2 Am-as, — Thou *lovest,* or *dost love.*
3 Am-at: — He *loveth,* or *doth love:*

Plur.
1 Am-amus, — We love, or *do love,*
2 Am-atis, — Ye (or *you*) *love* or *do love,*
3 Am-ant. — They love, or *do love.*

Imperfectum. — The Imperfect.

Sing.
1 Am-abam, — I *loved,* or *did love,*
2 Am-abas, — Thou *lovedst,* or *didst love,*
3 Am-abat: — He *loved,* or *did love:*

Plur.
1 Am-abamus, — We loved, or *did love,*
2 Am-abatis, — Ye loved, or *did love,*
3 Am-abant. — They *loved,* or *did love.*

Per-

Perfectum.	The Perfect.
1 Am-avi,	1 *I have loved.* *
2 Am-avisti,	2 *Thou hast loved,*
3 Am-avit :	3 *He hath loved :*
1 Am-avimus,	1 *We have loved,*
2 Am-avistis,	2 *Ye have loved,*
3 Am-averunt *vel* -avere.	3 *They have loved.*

Plusquam-perfectum.	The Plu-perfect.
1 Am-averam,	1 *I had loved,*
2 Am-averas,	2 *Thou hadst loved,*
3 Am-averat :	3 *He had loved :*
1 Am-averamus,	1 *We had loved,*
2 Am-averatis,	2 *Ye had loved,*
3 Am-averant.	3 *They had loved.*

Futurum.	The Future.
1 Am-abo,	1 *I shall* or *will love,*
2 Am-abis,	2 *Thou shalt* or *wilt love,*
3 Am-abit :	3 *He shall* or *will love :*
1 Am-abimus,	1 *We shall* or *will love,*
2 Am-abitis,	2 *Ye shall* or *will love,*
3 Am-abunt.	3 *They shall* or *will love.*

SUBJUNCTIVUS.   The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præsens.	The Present.
1 Am-em,	1 *I may* or *can love,*
2 Am-es,	2 *Thou mayst* or *canst love,*
3 Am-et :	3 *He may* or *can love :*
1 Am-emus,	1 *We may* or *can love,*
2 Am-etis,	2 *Ye may* or *can love,*
3 Am-ent.	3 *They may* or *can love.*

Imperfectum.	The Imperfect.
1 Am-arem,	1 *I might, could, would* or *should*
2 Am-ares,	2 *Thou mightest, couldst, wouldst, &c.*
3 Am-aret :	3 *He might, could, would* or *should*
1 Am-aremus,	1 *We might, could, would* or *should*
2 Am-aretis,	2 *Ye might, could, would* or *should*
3 Am-arent.	3 *They might, could, would* or *should*

love.

C   *Per-*

* Or, *I loved* or *did love,* Thou loved*st* or *didst love,* &c. as in the Imper-ct.

		Perfectum.	The Perfect.
Sing.	1	Am-averim,	1 *I may have loved,*
	2	Am-averis,	2 *Thou mayst have loved,*
	3	Am-averit :	3 *He may have loved :*
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1 *We may have loved,*
	2	Am-averitis,	2 *Ye may have loved,*
	3	Am-averint.	3 *They may have loved.*

Plusquam-perfectum.   The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	1	Am-aviſſem,	1 *I might, could, would &c. have or*
	2	Am-aviſſes,	2 *Thou mightest, couldst, &c. have or*
	3	Am-aviſſet :	3 *He might, could, &c. have or*
Plur.	1	Am-aviſſemus,	1 *We might, could, &c. have or*
	2	Am-aviſſetis,	2 *Ye might, could, &c. have or*
	3	Am-aviſſent.	3 *They might, could, &c. have or*

had loved.

		Futurum.	The Future.
Sing.	1	Am-avero,	1 *I shall have loved,*
	2	Am-averis,	2 *Thou shalt have loved,*
	3	Am-averit :	3 *He shall have loved :*
Plur.	1	Am-averimus,	1 *We shall have loved,*
	2	Am-averitis,	2 *Ye shall have loved,*
	3	Am-averint.	3 *They shall have loved.*

IMPERATIVUS Modus.   The IMPERATIVE Mood.

		Praſens.	The Preſent.
Sing.	2	Am-a *vel* am-ato,	2 *Love thou* or *do thou love.*
	3	Am-ato :	3 *Let him love :*
Plur.	2	Am-ate *vel* am-atote,	2 *Love ye* or *do ye love.*
	3	Am-anto.	3 *Let them love.*

INFINITIVUS Modus.   The INFINITIVE Mood.

Praſ. Am-are.   Preſ. *To love.*
Perf. Am-aviſſe.   Perf. *To have* or *had loved.*
Fut. Am-aturum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.   Fut. *To be about to love.*

PARTICIPIA.   The PARTICIPLES.

Praſ. Am-ans.   Of the Preſent, *Loving.*
Fut. Am-aturus, -a -um.   Of the Future, *About to love.*

GERUNDIA.   The GERUNDS.

Nom. Am-andum,   Nom. *Loving.*
Gen. Am-andi,   Gen. *Of loving.*

Dat.

Am-ando,		Dat. *To loving.*
Am-andum,		Acc. *Loving.*
Am-ando,		Abl. *From, in* or *by loving.*

SUPINA.	The S U P I N E S.
s, Am-atum.	Firſt, *To love.*
erius, Am-atu,	Laſt, *To love* or *to be loved.*

VOX PASSIVA.	The *Paſſive Voice.*
Amor, amatus, amari.	
INDICATIVUS Modus.	The INDICATIVE Mood.

Praſens. · The Preſent.

1 Am-or,	1 *I am loved,*
2 Am-aris *vel* am-are,	2 *Thou art loved,*
3 Am-atur :	3 *He is loved :*
1 Am-amur,	1 *We are loved,*
2 Am-amini,	2 *Ye are loved,*
3 Am-antur.	2 *They are loved.*

Imperfeċtum. The Imperfect.

1 Am-abar,	1 *I was*
2 Am-abaris *vel* -abare,	2 *Thou waſt* [*wert*]
3 Am-abatur :	3 *He was*
1 Am-abamur,	1 *We were*
2 Am-abamini,	2 *Ye were*
3 Am-abantur.	3 *They were*

} *loved.*

Perfeċtum. The Perfect.

Ama-tus {	1 ſum *vel* fui,	1 *I have been*
	2 es *vel* fuiſti,	2 *Thou haſt been*
	3 eſt *vel* fuit :	3 *He hath been*
Am-ati {	1 ſumus *vel* fuimus,	1 *We have been*
	2 eſtis *vel* fuiſtis,	2 *Ye have been*
	3 ſunt fuerunt *v.* fuere.	3 *They have been*

} *loved.*

Pluſquam-perfeċtum. The Plu-perfect.

Am-atus {	1 eram *vel* fueram,	1 *I had been*
	2 eras *vel* fueras,	2 *Thou hadſt been*
	3 erat *vel* fuerat :	3 *He had been*
Am-ati {	1 eramus *v.* fueramus,	1 *We had been*
	2 eratis *vel* fueratis,	2 *Ye had been*
	3 erant *vel* fuerant.	3 *They had been*

} *loved.*

Futurum. The Future.

1 Am-abor,	1 *I ſhall* or *will be*
2 Am-aberis *vel* -abere,	2 *Thou ſhalt* or *wilt be*
3 Am-abitur :	3 *He ſhall* or *will be*

} *loved.*

C 2 Plur.

Plur.		
1	Am-abimur,	1 We *shall* or *will be*
2	Am-abimini,	2 Ye *shall* or *will be* } loved.
3	Am-abuntur.	3 They *shall* or *will be*

SUBJUNCTIVUS *Modus.*   The SUBJUNCTIVE Mood.

Præsens.   The Present.

Sing.		
1	Am-er,	1 I *may* or *can be*
2	Am-eris *vel* -ere,	2 Thou *mayst* or *canst be*
3	Am-etur :	3 He *may* or *can be*

Plur.		
1	Am-emur,	1 We *may* or *can be*
2	Am-emini,	2 Ye *may* or *can be*
3	Am-entur.	3 They *may* or *can be*

} loved.

Imperfectum.   The Imperfect.

Sing.		
1	Am-arer,	1 I *might*, *could*, *would*, &c.
2	Am-areris *vel* -arere,	2 Thou *mightest*, *couldst*, &c.
3	Am-aretur :	3 He *might*, *could*, &c.

Plur.		
1	Am-aremur,	1 We *might*, *could*, &c.
2	Am-aremini,	2 Ye *might*, *could*, &c.
3	Am-arentur.	3 They *might*, *could*, &c.

} be loved.

Perfectum.   The Perfect.

Sing.	Am-atus		
		1 sim *vel* fuerim,	1 I *may have been*
		2 sis *vel* fueris,	2 Thou *mayst have been*
		3 sit *vel* fuerit :	3 He *may have been*

Plur.	Am-ati,		
		1 simus *vel* fuerimus,	1 We *may have been*
		2 sitis *vel* fueritis,	2 Ye *may have been*
		3 sint *vel* fuerint.	3 They *may have been*

} loved.

Plusquam-perfectum.   The Plu-perfect.

Sing.	Am-atus		
		1 essem *vel* fuissem,	1 I *might*, *could*, &c. *have or*
		2 esses *vel* fuisses,	2 Thou *mightest*, &c. *have or*
		3 esset *vel* fuisset :	3 He *might*, &c. *have or*

Plur.	Am-ati		
		1 essemus *v.* fuissemus,	1 We *might*, &c. *have or*
		2 essetis *v.* fuissetis,	2 Ye *might*, &c. *have or*
		3 essent *vel* fuissent.	3 They *might*, &c. *have or*

} had been loved.

Futurum.   The Future.

Sing.	Am-atus		
		1 fuero,	1 I *shall have been*
		2 fueris,	2 Thou *shalt have been*
		3 fuerit :	3 He *shall have been*

Plur.	Am-ati		
		1 fuerimus,	1 We *shall have been*
		2 fueritis,	2 Ye *shall have been*
		3 fuerint.	3 They *shall have been*

} loved.

IMPERATIVUS *Modus.*   The IMPERATIVE Mood.

Præsens.   The Present.

Sing.		
2	Am-are *vel* am-ator,	2 Be thou *loved*,
3	Am-ator :	3 Let him be *loved* :

Plur.

	2 Am-amini,	2 *Be ye loved,*
	3 Am-antor.	3 *Let them be loved.*

INFINITIVUS Modus.   The INFINITIVE Mood.

Praf. Am-ari.   *To be loved.*

Perf. Am-atum effe *vel* fuiffe.   *To have* or *had been loved.*

Fut. Am-atum iri.   *To be about to be loved.*

   PARTICIPIA.   The PARTICIPLES.

Perfecti temporis, Am-atus, -a -um.   Of the Perfect, *Loved.*

Futuri,   Am-andus, -a -um.   Of the Fut. *To be loved.*

Secunda Conjugatio.
VOX ACTIVA.

Doceo,   docui,   doctum,   docere.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.					*Plur.*	
	1	2	3	1	2	3	
Pr.	Doc-eo,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.	
Im.	Doc-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
Per.	Doc-ui,	-uifti,	-uit;	-uimus,	-uiftis,	{ -uerunt. / -uere.	
Plu.	Doc-ueram,	-ueras,	-uerat;	-ueramus,	-ueratis,	-uerant.	
Fut.	Doc-ebo,	-ebis,	-ebit;	-ebimus,	-ebitis,	-ebunt.	

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Doc-eam,	-eas,	-eat;	-eamus,	-eatis,	-eant.
Im.	Doc-erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-eremus,	eretis,	-erent.
Per.	Doc-uerim,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.
Plu.	Doc-uiffem,	-uiffes,	-uiffet;	-uiffemus,	-uiffetis,	-uiffent.
Fut.	Doc-uero,	-ueris,	-uerit;	-uerimus,	-ueritis,	-uerint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Praf. Doc- { -e, / -eto,   -eto;   { -ete, / -etote,   -ento.

INFINITIVUS.	*SUPINA.*	*PARTICIPIA.*	*GERUNDIA.*
Praf. Doc-ere.	1. Doc-tum.	*Pr.* Doc-ens.	Doc-endum.
Perf. Doc-uiffe.	2. Doc-tu.	*Fu.* Doc-turus.	Doc-endi.
Fut. Doc-turum effe *vel* fuiffe.			Doc-endo.

C 3   VOX

VOX PASSIVA.

Doceor, doctus, doceri.
INDICATIVUS.

Sing.				Plur.	

Pr. Doc-eor, { -eris, -ere, } -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.

Im. Doc-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebare, } -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebant

Fut. Doc-ebor, { -eberis, -ebere, } -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, -ebunt

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Doc-ear, { -earis, -eare, } -eatur; -eamur, -eamini, eantur.

Im. Doc-erer, { -ereris, -erere, } -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur

IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. Doc- { -ere, -etor, } -etor; -emini, -entor.

INFINITIVUS.	PARTICIPIA.
Præf. Doc-eri.	Per. Doc-tus, -a, -um
Perf. Doc-tum effe *vel* fuiffe.	Fut. Doc-endus, -a, -um
Fut. Doc-tum iri.	

Tertia Conjugatio.
VOX ACTIVA.

Lego, legi, lectum, legere.
INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Præf.	Eg-o,	-is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
Imp.	Leg-ebam,	-ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.
Perf.	Leg-i,	-ifti,	-it;	-imus,	-iftis,	-erunt,-e
Pluf.	Leg-eram,	-eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.
Fut.	Leg-am,	-es,	-et;	-emus,	-etis,	-ent.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præf.	Leg-am,	-as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
Imp.	Leg-erem,	-eres,	-eret;	-eremus,	-eretis,	-erem

Per

Perf. Leg-erim, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.
Pluf. Leg-iffem, -iffes, -iffet; -iffemus, -iffetis, -iffent.
Fut. Leg-ero, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. Leg- { -e, -ito, } ito; { -ite, -itote, } -unto.

INFINITIVUS. SUPINA. PARTICIPIA. GERUNDIA.
Præf. Leg-ere. 1. Lec-tum. *Pr.* Leg-ens. Leg-endum.
Perf. Leg-iffe. 2. Lec-tu. *Fut.* Lec-turus. Leg-endi.
Fut. Lec-turum   Leg-endo.
efle *vel* fuifle.

VOX PASSIVA.

Legor, lectus, legi.

INDICATIVUS.

Sing. Plur.

Pr. Leg-or, { -eris, -ere, } -itur; -imur, -imini, -untur.

Im. Leg-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebare, } -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.

Fut. Leg-ar, { -eris, -ere, } -etur; -emur, -emini, -entur.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr. Leg-ar, { -aris, -are, } -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.

Im. Leg-erer, { -ereris, -erere, } -eretur; -eremur, -eremini, -erentur.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. Leg- { -ere, -itor, } -itor; -imini, -untor.

INFINITIVUS. PARTICIPIA.
Præf. Leg-i. *Perf.* Lec-tus, -a, -um.
Perf. Lec-tum efle *vel* fuifle. *Fut.* Leg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lec-tum iri.

C 4 Quarta

Quarta Conjugatio.

VOX ACTIVA.

Audio, audivi, auditum, audire.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
Pr.	Aud-io,	-is,	-it,	-imus,	-itis,	-iunt.
Im.	Aud-iebam,	-iebas,	-iebat ;	-iebamus,	-iebatis,	-iebant.
Per.	Aud-ivi,	-ivisti,	-ivit ;	-ivimus,	-ivistis,	{ -iverunt, -ivere.
Pl.	Aud-iveram,	-iveras,	-iverat ;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.
Fu.	Aud-iam,	-ies,	-iet ;	-iemus,	-ietis,	-ient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iam,	-ias,	-iat ;	-iamus,	-iatis,	-iant.
Im.	Aud-irem,	-ires,	-iret ;	-iremus,	-iretis,	-irent.
Per.	Aud-iverim,	-iveris,	-iverit ;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.
Pl.	Aud-ivissem,	-ivisses,	-ivisset ;	-ivissemus,	-ivissetis,	-ivissent.
Fu.	Aud-ivero,	-iveris,	-iverit ;	-iverimus,	-iveritis,	-iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.

Pr.	Aud- { -i, -ito,	-ito ;	{ -ite, -itote,	-iunto.	

INFINITIVUS.	SUPINA.	PARTICIPIA.	GERUNDIA.
Pr. Aud-ire.	1. Aud-itum.	Pr. Aud-iens.	Aud-iendum.
Per. Aud-ivisse.	2. Aud-itu.	Fu. Aud-iturus.	Aud-iendi.
Fu. Aud-iturum esse *vel* fuisse.			Aud-iendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Audior, auditus, audiri.

INDICATIVUS.

	Sing.			Plur.		
Pr.	Aud-ior, { -iris, -ire,	-itur ;	-imur,	-imini,	-iuntur.	
Im.	Aud-iebar, { -iebaris, -iebare,	-iebatur ;	-iebamur,	-iebamini,	-iebantur.	
Fu.	Audiar, { -ieris, -iere,	-ietur ;	-iemur,	-iemini,	-ientur.	

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Pr.	Aud-iar, { -iaris, -iare,	-iatur ;	-iamur,	-iamini,	-iantur.	
Im.	Aud-irer, { -ireris, -irere,	-iretur ;	-iremur,	-iremini,	-irentur.	

I M-

IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. Aud- { -ire,   -itor ;   -imini,   -iuntor.
         { -itor,

INFINITIVUS.   PARTICIPIA.

Præf. Aud-iri. | *Per.* Aud-itus,   -a,   -um.
Perf. Aud-itum effe *vel* fuiffe. | *Fut.* Aud-iendus, -a,   -um.
Fut. Aud-itum iri. |

¶ Note, *That in the Examples of the* Second, Third *and* Fourth Conjugations, *we have omitted fuch Parts of the* Paffive Voice *as are fupplied by the* Participle-perfect *with the Verb* Sum, *viz. the* Perfect *and* Plu-perfect *of the* Indicative, *and the* Perfect, Plu-perfect *and* Future *of the* Subjunctive, *as being the fame in all* Conjugations *with the Example of the* Firft, *the Change of the* Participle *only excepted : But it is carefully to be obferved, that the* Participle *being an* Adjective, *muft agree in* Gender, Number *and* Cafe *with its* Subftantive, *or (which is the fame thing) with the* Perfon *before it.*

I. REMARKS fhewing when a LATIN *Verb* is to be rendred otherwise in ENGLISH than in the foregoing Examples.

WHEN the Continuation of a Thing is fignified, the Englifh Verb may be varied in all its Tenfes by the Participle in ING, with the Verb AM ; as,

Pref. *I am reading,*   }   { *I read.*
Imp. *I was reading,*   }   { *I did read.*
Perf. *I have been reading,* } for { *I have read.*
Plup. *I had been reading,*   }   { *I had read.*
Fut. *I fhall be reading,*   }   { *I fhall read.*

So likewife in the *Paffive* Voice, *The Houfe is building,* Domus ædificatur. *The Leffon was prefcribing,* Lectio præfcribebatur. Sometimes *a* is fet before the Participle ; as, *While the Houfe is a building, It is a doing, He is a dying.*

2. When a Queftion is asked, the Nominative Cafe or Perfon is fet after the Verb, or the Sign of the Verb ; as, *Love I ? Do I love ? Can I love ? Should he be loved ?*

3. We have made THOU the fecond Perfon fingular, to diftinguifh it from the Plural. But it is cuftomary with us (as alfo with the *French* and others) tho' we fpeak but to one particular Perfon, to ufe the Plural YOU ; and never THOU, but when we addrefs ourfelves to Almighty GOD, or otherwife when we fignify Familiarity, Difdain or Contempt.

4. The

4. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* is often englished as the *Imperfect*; as, *Nunquam amavi hunc hominem*, I never loved [or did love] this Man. See a Train of Examples in *Ovid. Metamorph. lib.* 1. from *v.* 21. to 39.

5. The PERFECT Tense is frequently englished by HAD after *Antequam, Postquam, Ubi* or *Ut* for *Postquam*; as, *Postquam superavimus Isthmum*, After we had [were] pass'd over the *Isthmus, Ovid. Hæc ubi dicta dedit*, When he had spoken these Words, *Lv. Ut me salutavit, statim Romam profectus est*, After he had saluted me, &c. Cic.

6. We have chosen MAY, CAN, MIGHT, COULD, &c. for the English of the SUBJUNCTIVE Mood, because these are the most frequent Signs of it, and distinguish it best from other Moods; but very often it is the same with the *Indicative*, save only that it hath some *Conjunction* or *Indefinite* Word before it; such as, *If, Seeing, Lest, That, Although, I wish*, &c. as, *Si amem*, If I love; *Ne amem*, Lest I love; *Causa est cur amem*, It is the Cause why I love, *Ovid*. And frequently it hath both; as, *Oro ut ames*, I intreat that you may love, *Idem*.

7. The PRESENT of the *Subjunctive*, after *Quasi, Tanquam*, and the like, is sometimes englished as the Imperfect; as, *Quasi intelligant qualis sit*, As if they understood what kind of Person he is, *Cic.*

8. When a Question is asked, the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* is frequently englished by SHALL or SHOULD; as, *Eloquar an sileam?* Shall I speak or be silent? *Virg. Singula quid referam?* Why should I mention every Thing? *Ovid.* Likewise after *Non est quod*; as, *Non est* (supple *causa*) *quod eas*, There is no Reason why you should go, *or* you need not go. Sometimes it is englished by WOULD; as, *In facinus jurâsse putes*, You would think they had sworn to [commit] Wickedness, *Ovid.*

9. We have englished the PERFECT of the *Subjunctive* in RIM by MAY HAVE; (as, *Ne frustra hi tales viri venerint*, That such Men as these may not have come in vain, *Cic. Forsitan audieris*, You may perhaps have heard it:) to distinguish it from the *Present* and *Plu-perfect*, by the Signs of which it is also most frequently englished; as, *Ut sic dixerim*, That I may so speak. *Ubi ego audiverim?* Where should I have heard it? *Unus homo tantas strages ediderit?* Could one Man make so great a Slaughter? *Virg. Fortasse errarim*, Perhaps I might be in an Error, *Plin. Oratores quos viderim peritissimi*, The ablest Orators I have seen [or could see] *Quintil.*

10. This *Perfect* in RIM sometimes inclines very much to a future Signification, and then it is englished by SHOULD, WOULD, COULD, CAN, WILL, SHALL; as, *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, *Juv. Libenter audierim*, I would gladly hear, *Cic. Ciceronem cuicunque eorum facilè opposuerim*, I could easily match *Cicero* with any of them, *Quintil. Non facile dixerim*, I cannot well tell, *Cic. Nec tamen excluserim alios*, And yet I will not exclude others, *Plin. Si paululum modo quid te fugerit, ego perierim*, If you but trip in the least, I shall be undone, *Ter.* But all those Ways of speaking, tho' indeed they respect the Future as to the Execution, yet they seem also to look a little beyond it, to a Time when their Futurity shall be past; and so come near in Signification to the Future in RO.

11. The *Perfect* of the *Subjunctive* after *Quasi, Tanquam*, and the like, may sometimes be englished by HAD; as, *Quasi affuerim*, As if I had been present, *Plaut. Perinde ac si jam vicerint*, As if they had already overcome, *Cic.*

12. The PLU-PERFECT in ISSEM is sometimes englished by SHOULD; as, *Imperaret quod vellet, quodcunque imperavisset, se esse facturos*, He might command what he pleased, whatever he commanded [should command]

mand] they would do, *Cæf. Fædus iſtum eſt his legibus, ut cujus populi cives eo certamine viciſſent, is alteri imperaret,* An Agreement was made on theſe Terms, that that People, whoſe Countrymen ſhould be victorious in that Combat, ſhould have the Sovereignty over the other, *Liv.* And this happens when a Thing is ſignified as future at a certain paſt Time referred to ; and commonly takes Place, when what was formerly ſaid directly is afterwards recited indirectly ; as, *Ne dubita, dabitur quodcunque optaris,* Doubt not, whatſoever thou ſhalt chooſe ſhall be given thee, *Ovid. Sol Phaëthonti facturum ſe eſſe dixit, quicquid optaſſet,* The Sun told Phaethon that he would do whatſoever he ſhould chooſe, *Cic.* Where it is worth noticing, that what was the *Future* of the *Subjunctive* in the direct Speech, becomes the *Plu-perfect* in the indirect Recital of it. See *Turner's* Exerciſes, *p.* 21. &c. But as we have ſaid, *p.* 30. the *Plu-perfect,* notwithſtanding its coming in the Place of a *Future,* ſtill retains its own proper compound Time, that is, it was prior to a Thing now paſt at the Time of the Recital by *Cicero,* tho' it was future when firſt ſpoken by the *Sun.* And therefore there is no Reaſon for making this Termination *iſſem* a *Future* Tenſe, as Mr. *Turner* does.

13. Tho' the proper Engliſh of the FUTURE in RO be SHALL HAVE, yet generally the HAVE or the SHALL, and frequently both, are omitted ; as, *Qui Antonium oppreſſerit, is bellum confecerit,* He who ſhall cut off *Antony,* ſhall put an End to the War, *Cic. Haud deſinam donec perfecero hoc,* I will not give over till I have effected this, *Ter. Si negaverit,* If he denies it, *Cic.* Sometimes it is engliſhed by WILL ; as, *Dixerit fortaſſe aliquis,* Somebody will perhaps ſay, *Cic. Aut conſolando, aut conſilio, aut re juvero,* I will aſſiſt you either by comforting you, or with Counſel, or with Money, *Idem.* But tho' we thus render the *Future* in RO in our Language, and tho' (which is more material) very frequently it and the *Future* of the *Indicative* are uſed promiſcuouſly, yet I cannot be perſuaded that in any Inſtance the formal Significations of theſe are the ſame, as Mr. *Johnſon* contends, *p.* 339. But ſtill think with the great *Voſſius,* that the *Future* in RO is always a *Future-perfect,* that is, that there is a Time inſinuated when a Thing yet future ſhall be finiſhed or paſt ; and that even when a *Future* of the *Indicative* is joined with it, which in Order of Time ſhould be done before it ; as, *Pergratum mihi feceris, ſi diſputabis,* You ſhall have done [ſhall do] me a great Favour, if you ſhall diſpute, *Cic.* For what hinders that we may not faintly hint at the finiſhing of an Action yet future, without formally conſidering the finiſhing of another Action on which it depends ; and on the contrary ? But if the promiſcuous Uſage of Tenſes one for another be ſufficient to make them formally the ſame, then we ſhall confound all Tenſes, and overthrow the very Arguments Mr. *Johnſon* makes Uſe of againſt *Sanctius,* with reſpect to the Tenſes of the Infinitive.

14. The TO of the INFINITIVE is generally omitted after *May, Can, Might, Would, Could,* (which are ſometimes Verbs themſelves, and not the bare Signs of them :) alſo after *Muſt, Bid, Dare, Let, Help* and *Make.*

15. But what is moſt to be regarded in the *Infinitive* is, that when it hath an Accuſative before it, it is commonly engliſhed as the Indicative Mood, the Particle THAT being ſometimes put before it, but oftner underſtood. And it is carefully to be remarked, that the ſame Tenſes of the Infinitive are differently engliſhed, according as the preceeding Verb varies its Tenſes ; as will appear in the following Scheme.

Dicit me ſcribere,	He ſays [that] I write.
Dixit me ſcribere,	He ſaid [that] I was writing:
Dicet me ſcribere,	He ſhall ſay [that] I am writing.

Dicit

Dicit me scripsisse,	He says [that] I wrote, or did write.
Dixit me scripsisse,	He said [that] I had written.
Dicet me scripsisse,	He shall say [that] I have written, or did write.
Dicit me scripturum [esse,]	He says [that] I will write.
Dixit me scripturum [esse,]	He said [that] I would write.
Dicet me scripturum [esse,]	He shall say [that] I will write.
Dicit me scripturum fuisse,	He says [that] I would have written.
Dixit me scripturum fuisse,	He said [that] I would have written.
Dicet me scripturum fuisse,	He shall say [that] I would have written.

It will be of great Use to accustom the Learner to render the Infinitive after this Manner, both in *English* and *Latin,* especially after he has been taught something of Construction: And then to cause him vary the Accusative *Me* into *Te, se, illum, hominem, fœminam,* &c. and these again into the Plural, *Nos, vos, se, illos, homines, fœminas,* &c. But he must be careful to make the Participles agree with them in Gender, Number and Case.

NOTE, 1. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Present* or *Future* Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* with *esse,* is rendered by SHALL or WILL; and when it is of the *Perf.* & Tense, the *Fut.* of the *Infinit.* is rendered by WOULD, as in the Examples above; and sometimes by SHOULD; as, *Dixi te sciturum esse,* I said that you should know.

NOTE, 2. That when the preceeding Verb is of the *Imperfect* or *Plu-perfect* Tenses, the English of the *Infinitive* is the same as when it is of the Perfect.

16. The *Perfect* of the *Indicative* and *Subjunctive Passive,* made up with *Sum* or *Sim,* are englished by AM, ART, IS, ARE, instead of HAVE BEEN, when the Thing is signified to be just now past; as, *Vulneratus sum,* I am wounded; *Opus finitum est,* The Work is finished; *Cùm tempora mutata sint,* Since the Times are changed.

17. When it is made up by *fui,* it is frequently englished by WAS, WAST, WERE, WERT; as, *Roma fuit capta,* Rome was taken: As is also what is called the *Plu-perfect,* with *eram* and *essem;* as, *Labor finitus erat,* The Labour was finished; *Si labor finitus esset,* If the Labour were finished.

II. REMARKS on the LATIN Conjugations.

1. A Great Part of the *Passive* Voice, and some of the *Active,* is made up of two of its own *Participles,* and the Auxiliary Verb *Sum,* (of which you have the full Conjugation *p.* 52.) after this Manner:

	Sum or *fui*		Perf.	Indicat.
	eram or *fueram*		Plup.	
The Participle	*sim* or *fuerim*	makes the	Perf.	
Perfect with	*essem* or *fuissem*		Plup.	Subjunct. Passive.
	fuero		Fut.	
	esse or *fuisse*		Perf.	Infinit.
The Participle Fut. Act. with	*esse* or *fuisse*		Fut.	Infinit. Active.

2. Having *p.* 30. laid it down as a probable Opinion, that every Part of a Verb, with all its *Participles,* have a certain fixt Time simple or compound, which they formally and of their own Nature signify, it will perhaps be here expected that I should account for that great Variety that is found in the

he *Passive* Voice. To put this Matter in the cleareft Light I am able, I muft premife another Divifion of the *Tenfes*, *viz*. into P A S S I N G and P A S T; or into fuch as import the Continuance of an Action or Thing, without regard to the ending or finifhing of it ; and fuch as import that the Thing is finifhed (or to be finifhed) and done. Of the firft fort are the *Prefent*, *Imperfect* and *Future-Imperfect* ; of the fecond fort are the *Perfect*, *Pluperfect* and *Future-perfect*, See Page 29. From this Divifion of the Tenfes, together with what we have formerly faid, we are furnifhed with an eafy Method of diftinguifhing all the Parts of the *Paffive*. Thus, for inftance, let the Subject of Difcourfe be the building of an Houfe. 1. When I fay *Domus Ædificatur*, I mean that it is juft now a-building, but not finifhed. 2. When *Ædificabatur*, that it was then, or at a certain paft Time, a-building, but not then finifhed. 3. *Ædificabitur*, that fome Time hence it fhall be a-building, without any formal Regard to the finifhing of it. But when I make ufe of the *Participle-perfect*, I always fignify a Thing compleated and ended ; but with thefe Subdiftinctions. 1. *Ædificata eft* ; I mean fimply, that it is finifhed, without any Regard to the Time when. 2. *Ædificata fuit* ; it is finifhed, and fome Time fince has interveened. 3. *Ædificata erat* ; it was finifhed at a certain paft Time referred to, with which it was contemporary. 4. *Ædificata fuerat* ; it was finifhed before a certain Time paft referred to, to which it was prior. 5. *Ædificata erit* ; it fhall be finifhed fome Time hereafter, either without regard to a particular Time when, or with refpect to a certain Time yet future, with which its finifhing fhall be contemporary. 6. And laftly, *Ædificata fuerit* ; it fhall be finifhed and paft before another Thing yet future, to which its finifhing fhall be prior. And thus we have nine different Times or Complications of Times, without confounding them with one another. But then how comes it to pafs that thefe are fo frequently ufed promifcuoufly ? I anfwer, That this proceeds from one or more of thefe four Reafons. 1. Becaufe it very frequently happens in Difcourfe that we have no Occafion particularly to confider thefe various Relations and Complications of Times ; and 'tis the fame Thing to our Purpofe whether the Thing is or was done, or a-doing ; or whether it was done juft now, or fome Time ago ; or whether another Thing was (or fhall be) contemporary with, or prior to it : And the Matter being thus, we reckon ourfelves at Liberty to take feveral Parts of the Verb at random, as being fecure not only of being underftood, but alfo that in thefe Circumftances whatever we pitch on, even when examined by the Rules above, fhall be found literally true. 2. It is ufual with us to ftate ourfelves as prefent with, and as it were Eye witneffes of the Things we relate, tho' really they were tranfacted long before ; whence it is that we frequently ufe the Prefent inftead of fome paft Time. 3. 'Tis to be remarked that there are fome Verbs, the Action whereof is in fome Senfe finifhed when begun ; in which Cafe it will fometimes be all one whether we ufe the paffing or paft Tenfes. And 4. The Prefent Tenfe (which ftrictly fpeaking is gone before we pronounce it) is generally taken in a larger Acceptation, and fometimes ufed for the Future, when we fignify that the Execution is very near, or (according to *Perizonius*) when together with the Action we take in alfo the Preparation to it. The Brevity we are confin'd to will not allow us to illuftrate thefe Things with Examples. But by them I think we may account for the promifcuous Ufage of the Tenfes, in both Voices ; and what cannot be reduced to thefe feems to be an Abufe of the Language, and being very rarely to be met with, and perhaps only among the Poets, ought not to be made a common Standard. I fhall only

ly

ly add for a Proof that thefe Tenfes are not always to be ufed indifferent-
ly; that when we fignify a Thing to be juft now finifhed, we cannot ufe *Fui*
or *fuerim,* or *fuiffe,* but *Sum, fim* and *effe.*

3. Whether the Learner fhould be obliged to get by Heart thefe Parts of
the *Paffive* that are are fupplied by SUM, or if they fhould be referred to Con-
ftruction (to which they feem more naturally to belong) I leave to the Dif-
cretion of the Mafter, and therefore have put them in a fmaller Character.

4. Befides thefe Parts which are thus made up, all the other Parts may be
refolved into its own Participles and the Verb *Sum,* tho' their Significations
are not precifely the fame; as,

Amo,	*amabam,*	*amavi,*	*amaveram,*	*amabo.*
Sum amans,	*eram amans,*	*fui amans,*	*fueram amans,*	*ero amans,* or
				fum amaturus.
Amor,	*amabar,*	*amabor,*	*amer,*	*amarer.*
Sum amatus,	*eram amatus,*	*ero amatus,*	*amatus fim,*	*amatus effem.*

5. The Participle in RUS with the Verb SUM is frequently ufed inftead
of the *Future* of the *Indicative,* efpecially if *Purpofe* or *Intention* is fignified;
as, *Profecturus fum,* or *Proficifcar,* I will go, *or* I am to go; and with *Sim* and
effem inftead of the *Future-Imperfect,* or *Plu-perfect* of the *Subjunctive;* as,
Non dubito quin fit facturus, I doubt not but he will do it. *Non dubitavi quin*
effet facturus, I doubted not but he would do it; and not *quin fecerit,* or *faceret,*
or *feciffet.*

6. We have not joined ERO with FUERO for the *Future* of the *Subjun-*
ctive, becaufe we thought it incongruous to couple Words of different
Moods: Tho' it muft be owned that it comes nearer in Signification to
the *Fut.* of the *Subjunctive,* than that of the *Indicative,* as, *Ovid. Qui cum*
victus erit, is much the fame as *Victus fuerit:* And fo thefe ancient Law-
yers, *Scævola, Brutus* and *Manilius* underftood the Words of the *Attinian*
Law, *Quod fubreptum erit, ejus rei æterna auctoritas efto.* But that a *Preterite*
Time is there infinuated, is owing not to the Word *erit,* but to the Prete-
rite-Participle with which it is joined, as they learnedly argue. See *Au-*
lus Gellius, lib. XVII. *cap.* 7.

7. We have omitted the Termination MINOR in the fecond Perfon
Plural of the *Imperative,* not thinking it fit to make that an ordinary Stan-
dard (as the common *Rudiments* do) which is to be found only once or
twice in *Plautus,* Epid. 5. 2. *Facto opere arbitraminor.* And Pfeud. 2. 2.
Pariter progrediminor.

8. For the fame Reafon we have excluded the ancient Termination
ASSO in the *Future Subjunctive* of the firft Conjugation; as, *Excantaffo* in
the Laws of the 12 Tables, *Levaffo* in *Ennius, Abjuraffo, invitaffo, Cænaffo,*
Irritaffo, Servaffo, &c. in *Plautus;* for *Excantavero, Levavero,* &c. to which
may be added ESSO of the fecond Conjugation: as, *Liceffit,* Idem; *pro-*
hibeffit, Cic. for *Licuerit, prohibuerit;* To thefe fome add, *Juffo* for *juffero* in
that of *Virg. Æn.* 11. *v.* 467.

Catera, qua juffo, mecum manus inferat arma.

But tho' I was once of that Opinion, yet I now incline with *Voffius* to
think that it is only a *Syncope:* But not for the Reafon brought for it by
him, namely, that the other Examples in *ffo* change *r* into *ff,* as, *Levaro, le-*
vaffo; but becaufe I believe thefe old Futures were formed not from the
common Futures in *ero,* as he fuppofes, but from the fecond Perfon Sing.
of the Prefent of the Indic. by adding *fo;* as, *levas, levaffo; prohibes, prohibef-*
fo: According to which Rule *Jubeo* muft have formed *jubeffo,* not *juffo.*

9. Upon

9. Upon the same Account we have omitted the Future of the Infini-
ive in ASSERE formed from ASSO; as, *Impetraffire, reconciliaffere, ex-
gnaffere,* in *Plautus*; for *impetraturum effe,* &c.

10. Tho' we frequently meet with *amaturus* and *amatus effe* vel *fuiffe,* &c.
the *Nominative*, as, *Dicitur amaturus effe,* yet we have contented ourfelves
ith the Accufative *amaturum* and *amatum,* as moft common, referving the
iftinction between thefe to Conftruction. [See Page 77.]

11. The *Future* of the *Infinitive Paffive* is made up of the *Firft Supine* and
RI the Infinitive Paffive of EO : And therefore it is not varied in Numbers
nd Genders, as the Parts made up of the Participle with *Sum.*

12. But the Supine with IRE is not the Future of the Infinitive Active, as
ome teach ; for fuch Phrafes as thefe, *Amatum ire, Doctum ire,* are rather
f the Prefent than Future Tenfe.

13. The Participle in DUS with *effe* and *fuiffe,* is not properly the Future
f the Infinitive Paffive, as is commonly believed : For it does not fo much
mport *Futurity,* as *Neceffity, Duty* or *Merit.* For there is a great Difference
etween thefe two Sentences, *Dicit literas à fe fcriptum iri,* and *Dicit literas à
 fcribendas effe;* the firft fignifying, *That a Letter will be written by him,* or
hat he will write a Letter; and the fecond, *That a Letter muft be written by
im,* or, *He is obliged to write a Letter.* For tho' *Sanctius,* and *Meffieurs de
ort Royal* contend that this Participle is fometimes ufed for fimple Futu-
ity, yet I think *Perizonius* and *Johnfon* have clearly evinced the contrary.

14. It is to be noted, That the *Imperative* Mood wants the firft Perfon
oth Singular and Plural, becaufe no Man can or needs command or ex-
ort himfelf : Or, if he does, he muft juftle himfelf out of the firft into
he fecond Perfon, as in that of *Catullus,* fpeaking to himfelf, *At tu Ca-
ulle deftinatus obdura,* But you *Catullus* continue obftinate.

15. The *Prefent* of the *Subjunctive* is moft frequently ufed inftead of
he *Imperative,* efpecially in forbidding, after *Ne, nemo, nullus,* &c. as,
aleas, Farewel, for *Vale. Ne facias,* Do it not, rather than *Ne fac.* And
ometimes the *Future* of the *Subjunctive;* as, *Tu videris,* See you to it.
e dixeris, Don't fay it. And fometimes alfo the *Future* of the *Indica-
ive;* as, *Non occides,* Thou fhalt not kill, for *Ne occide,* or *occid to. Sed va-
bis meaque negotia videbis,* Cic i. e. *Sed vale meaque negotia vide. Referes
rgo hæc & nuncius ibis Pelidæ genitori,* Virg. i. e. *refer & ito.* But it is to
e remarked that none of thefe are proper *Imperatives;* for to the firft is
nderftood *ora, rogo, peto,* or the like, with *ut;* as alfo to the fecond, with
 underftood, or *ne* expreft; and the third is only a Command by Con-
quence, becaufe of the Authority, Influence or Power of the Speaker.
or which Reafon, and to keep the Moods from interfering with one an-
ther, we have excluded thefe from the *Imperative:* Tho' the common *Ru-
ments* take in the firft, and *Alvarus* the fecond and third. However, it
 obfervable that we fhew moft Civility and Refpect when we ufe the *Sub-
unctive,* and moft Authority by the *Future* of the *Indicative,* and NTO of
e *Imperative;* which laft is the ordinary Strain in which Laws are deli-
ered. But this Rule is not always followed.

16. The RIS of the fecond Perfon *Paffive* is more ufual than RE ; and
RUNT of the *Perfect* of the *Indicative Active* than ERE ; efpecially in
ofe, in which, if a Vowel follow, they are very rarely to be met with.

III. RE-

III. REMAKRS *upon* ENGLISH Verbs.

1. AN *English Verb* hath only two *Tenses*, diftinguiſhed by different *Terminations*, and both in the *Active Voice*, *viz.* the *Preſent* and *Preterite*. The *Preſent* is the Verb itſelf, and the *Preterite* is commonly made by adding *ed* to it, or *d*, when it ends in *e*; as, *Fill, filled*; *Love, loved*.

2. All the other Parts of the *Active*, and the whole *Paſſive* is made up of the Auxiliary Verbs, *Do, Have, Shall, Will, May, Can,* and *Am*; as in Page 31. and in the Example, *To love*, Page 32, *&c.*

3. An Engliſh Verb hath different Terminations for the *Perſons* of the ſingular Number. The *Preſent* hath three or four. The firſt Perſon is the Verb itſelf; the ſecond ends in *eſt* or *ſt*; the third in *eth, es* or *s*. The *Preterite* hath only two; the firſt commonly ending in *ed*, and the ſecond in *eſt* or *ſt*: But the third Perſon ſingular of the *Preterite*, and all the Perſons plural, both of it and the *Preſent*, cannot otherwiſe be diſtinguiſhed than by the Nominatives before them; which therefore can never be omitted, as in the *Latin*.

4. We have two *Participles*, the *Preſent* ending always in *ing*, and the *Preterite* ending regularly in *ed*, but very frequently in *en* and *t*.

5. There are a great many *Irregular Engliſh* Verbs; but it is to be noted, 1. That that *Irregularity* relates only to the Termination of the *Preterite* Tenſe, and the *Paſſive Participle*. 2. That it reaches only ſuch Words as are native, and originally *Engliſh*. 3. That it is to be found only in Words of one Syllable, or derived from Words of one Syllable. 4. That where the *Preterite* is regular, the *Paſſive Participle* is the ſame with it. Except *Hewed, Mowed, Shewed, Snowed, Sowed*; which have *Hewn, Mown, Shown, Snown, Sown*.

6. Theſe *Irregularities* may be reduced to the following Heads:

(1.) The *d* is changed into *t* after *c, ch, ſh, f, k, p, x*; and after *s* and *th*, when pronounced hard; and ſometimes after *l, m, n, r,* when a ſhort Vowel goes before it, as, *Plac't, Snatch't, Fiſh't, Walk't, Dwelt, Smelt*. But when a long Vowel goes before *p*, it is either ſhortned, or changed into a ſhort one; as, *Kept, Slept, Wept, Crept, Swept, Leapt,* from *keep, ſleep, weep, creep, ſweep, leap*, as alſo ſometimes before *l, m, n, r,* and *v* turned into *f*; as, *Feel, felt*; *Dream, dreamt*; *Mean, meant*; *Leave, left*.

(2.) When the *Preſent* ends in *d* or *t*, the *Preterite* is ſometimes the ſame with it; as, *Read, Caſt, Hurt, Burſt, Hit, Quit*; and when two Vowels preceed, the laſt is left out; as, *Spread, ſpred*; *Lead, led*; *Feed, fed*; *Bleed, bled*; *Meet, met*. When a Conſonant comes before *d*, it is ſometimes changed into *t*; as, *Bend, bent*; *Lend, lent*; *Send, ſent*; *Rend, rent*; *Gird, girt*.

(3.) Moſt of the other irregular Verbs may be comprehended under the following Liſts.

I. Such as have their Preterite and Participle Paſſive the ſame.

Awake,	awoke.	Find,	found.	Pay,	paid.	Sting,	ſtung.
Abide,	abode.	Flee,	fled.	Say,	ſaid.	Swing,	ſwung.
Beſeech,	beſought.	Fling,	flung.	Seek,	ſought.	Swim,	ſwum.
Bind,	bound.	Grind,	ground.	Sell,	ſold.	Teach,	taught.
Bring,	brought.	Gild,	gilt.	Sit,	ſat.	Tell,	told.
Buy,	bought.	Hang,	hung.	Shine,	ſhone.	Think,	thought.
Catch,	caught.	Hear,	heard.	Spin,	ſpun.	Work,	wrought.
Dig,	dug.	Lay,	laid.	Spring,	ſprung.	Win,	won.
Drink,	drunk.	Loſe,	loſt.	Stand,	ſtood.	Wind,	wound.
Fight,	fought.	Make,	made.	Stick,	ſtuck.	Wring,	wrung.

II. *Such*

II. *Such as have the Preterite and Participle different; as,*

ar,	bore,	born.	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.	Shrink,	shrank,	shrunk.
gin,	began,	begun.	Get,	got,	gotten.	Sink,	sank,	sunk.
,	bad,	bidden.	Give,	gave,	given.	Slay,	flew,	flain.
at,	beat,	beaten.	Go,	went,	gone.	Slide,	flid,	flidden.
e,	bit,	bitten.	Grow,	grew,	grown.	Smite,	fmote,	fmitten,
w,	blew,	blown.	Hew,	hewed,	hewen.	Strike,	ftruck,	ftricken.
ide,	chid,	chidden.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.	Speak,	fpoke,	fpoken.
oose	chose,	chofen.	Hold,	held,	holden.	Spit,	fpat,	fpitten.
eave,	clove,	cleft.	Know,	knew,	known.	Strive,	ftrove,	ftriven.
ome,	came,	come.	Ly,	lay,	lay'n.	Swear,	fwore,	fworn.
ow,	crew,	crow'd.	Ride,	rode,	ridden.	Swell,	fwell'd,	fwoln.
re,	durft,	dared.	Ring,	rang,	rung.	Take,	took,	taken.
,	did,	done.	Rife,	rofe,	rifen.	Tear,	tore,	torn.
aw,	drew,	drawn.	Run,	ran,	run.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
ive,	drove,	driven.	See,	faw,	feen.	Throw,	threw,	thrown.
t,	eat,	eaten.	Seethe,	fod,	fodden.	Tread,	trode,	trodden.
ll,	fell,	fallen.	Shake,	fhook,	fhaken.	Wear,	wore,	worn.
,	flew,	flown.	Shear,	fhore,	fhorn.	Weave,	wove,	woven,
rfake,	forfook,	forfaken.	Shoot,	fhot,	fhotten.	Write,	wrote,	written.

Thefe Preterites, *Bare, Share, Sware, Tare, Ware, Clave, Gat, Begat, For-*, *Brake, Spake, Slang, Sprang, Swang, Wan, Stank, Sank,* are feldom ufed.

, *Befeech'd, Catch'd, Work'd, Digged, Gilded, Girded, Hang'd, Swam, Writ,* *Befought, Caught,* &c. are frequently to be met with.

Note, 1. That when the Verb ends in one *Confonant,* that *Confonant* is the moft part doubled before *ing, ed, eft, edft* and *eth*, as, *Worfhip, wor-*pping, worfhipped, worfhippeft, worfhippedft, worfhippeth:* As alfo before , as, *Bid, bidden.*

Note, 2. That the APOSTROPHUS (which was become too common *Englifh* Verbs; as, *Lou'd, lov'ft,* for *loved, loveft,*) begins now to be ufed by the moft polite Writers in Profe; but Poets ftill ufe it, tho' t fo much as formerly.

Note, 3. That the *Preterite Active* and the *Participle Paffive* (when one rd ferves for both) are thus diftinguifhed: When it hath nothing be-re it but the Nominative alone, or *have* or *had* with it, it is the *Preterite* ctive; but when it hath any Part of the helping Verb AM, it is the *Par-*ple Paffive.

EXCEPT *Come, Gone, Run, Set, Rifen, Fallen, Grown, Withered,* and fuch e Litranfitive Verbs, which have frequently the *Paffive Signs* AM, ART, . inftead of HAVE in the *Perfect* Tenfe; and WAS, WAST, &c. inftead HAD in the *Plu-perfect*; as, *Veni,* I am come; *Veneram,* I was come.

Note, 4. That tho' the Latin *Perfect* frequently anfwers both to HAVE d DID (or the Preterite Termination ED, &c.) yet they feem to be thus di-nguifhed. DID or ED, &c. refpects a certain paft Time, in which the thing s finifhed, or a-finifhing; as, *I wrote,* or *did write yefterday:* HAVE either eaks of a thing as but juft now paft, or at leaft does not refer to any parti-lar Time that it happened at; as, *I have written my Letter,* i. e. juft now; ave read of Julius Cæfar, *i. e.* fome time or other. The firft of thefe is cal-d the *Præterperfect Definite,* and the other the *Præterperfect Indefinite.*

Note, 5. That SHALL and WILL by Mr. *Brightland* are thus diftin-uifhed;

D

In the First Person simply SHALL foretells;
In WILL a Threat, or elfe a Promife dwells.
SHALL in the Second and the Third does threat;
WILL fimply then foretells the future Feat.

By Mr. *Turner* thus,

WILL imports the *Will* or *Purpose* of the Perfon it is joined with
SHALL implies the *Will* of another, who *promifes* or *threatens* to do the
Thing, or caufe it to be done, *permits* it, *commands* it, or the like.

De Formatione Verborum.	Of the Formation of Verbs.
QUatuor funt Terminationes Verbi, à quibus reliquæ omnes formantur; *fciz.* *o* Prefentis, *i* Præteriti, *um* Supini, & *re* Infinitivi, hoc modo;	THere are four Termination of a Verb, from which all the reft are formed; namely, of the Prefent, i of the Preterite um of the Supine, and re of the Infinitive, after this Manner;
1. Ab *o* formantur *am* & *em.*	1. From o are formed am and em.
2. Ab *i* formantur *ram, rim, ro, ffem & ffe.*	2. From i, ram, rim, ro, ffe and ffem.
3. Ab *um* formantur *u, us* & *rus.*	3. U, us and rus are form ed from um.
4. A *re* formantur reliquæ omnes; nempe, *bam, bo, rem, a, e, i, ns, dus, dum, di, do.*	4. All other Parts from re do come As, bam, bo, rem, a, e and i, Ns and dus, dum, do and di.

In every complete *Verb* there are commonly four PRINCIPAL PARTS
viz. the *Prefent* of the *Indicative* in O, the *Preterite* or *Perfect* in I, the firft
Supine in UM, and the *Prefent* of the *Infinitive* in RE. The firft (which
is therefore called the THEME or Root of the *Verb*) gives *Origin* to the
whole Verb, either *mediately* or *immediately.* The *Preterite,* the firft *Supine,*
and the *Prefent* of the *Infinitive,* come from it *immediately,* and all the reft
from them; except the *Future* of the *Indicative* in *am,* and the *Prefent* of
the *Subjunctive* in *em* or *am,* which by this Scheme are alfo formed *imme*
diately from the *Prefent* in O.

It is to be noted, that the *Preterites* and *Supines* of the *Firft Conjugation*
end commonly in *avi* and *atum,* of the *Second* in *ui* and *itum,* and of the
Fourth in *ivi* and *itum.* But the *Third Conjugation* cannot be reduced to
any general Rule, and there are a great many Exceptions in the other
three, which are therefore to be learned by daily Practice, till the Scholar
is advanced to that Part of *Grammar* that treats particularly of them.
But the *Prefent* of the *Infinitive,* and all the other Parts of the Verb
are regularly formed after one fixt and uniform Manner.

In the foregoing Rules of *Formation,* I have, for the Eafe of the Memory, put the *Terminations* inftead of the *Moods* and *Tenfes;* but for the
greater Plainnefs they may be thus expreffed.

I. Fro

I. From the *Present* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Future* of the *Indicative* of the *Third* and *Fourth Conjugations* in *am*, and the *Present* of the *Subjunctive* of the *First* in *em*, and of the other three in *am*.

II. From the *Perfect* of the *Indicative* are formed the *Plu-perfect* of it, the *Perfect*, *Plu-perfect* and *Future* of the *Subjunctive*, and the *Perfect* of the *Infinitive*.

III. From the *First Supine* is formed the *Last Supine*, the *Participle Perfect* and *Future Active*.

IV. From the *Present* of the *Infinitive* are formed the *Imperfect* of the *Indicative*, the *Future* of the same when it ends in BO, (*viz.* in the first and second *Conjugations*,) the *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*, the *Imperative*, the *Participles Present* and *Future Passive*, and the *Gerunds*.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs in IO of the *Third Conjugation* retain *i* before *nt, unto, ebam, am, ens, endus, endum*; but lose it in the *Present* of the *Infinitive*, and *Imperfect* of the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 2. That the *last Person Plur.* of the *Imperative* may be formed by adding *o* to the same *Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*; as, *Amant, amanto; docent, docento*.

NOTE, 3. That the *Passive Voice* is formed from the same *Tenses* of the *Active*, (except where *Sum* is used) by adding *r* to *o*, or changing *m* into *r*.

NOTE, 4. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Passive* of the *Third Conjugation* may be formed by taking *s* from the *Second Person* of the *Present* of the *Indicative Active*; as, *legis, legi*; or when the Verb is *Deponent*, by changing *or*, or *ior*, into *i*; as, *Proficiscor, proficisci: morior, mori*.

NOTE, 5. That the *Present* of the *Infinitive Active*, and the *Second Person* of the *Indicative* and *Imperative Passive* in *re*, are always the same.

NOTE, 6. That the *Second Person Plural* of the *Present* of the *Indicative*, and of the *Imperative*, are the same in the *Passive* Voice.

NOTE, 7. That where any of the *Principal Parts* are wanting, these Parts are commonly wanting that come from them. For which Reason Grammarians give *Supines* to a great many Verbs, which yet are not to be found in any Author, because the Participles formed from them are found: And they suppose likewise all *Deponent* Verbs of old to have had the *Active* Voice, and consequently *Supines*, tho' now lost.

NOTE, 8. That all Verbs of the *Second Conjugation* end in *eo*, and all Verbs of the *Fourth* in *io*, except *eo* and *queo*. There are Eight Verbs in *eo* of the first *Conjugation*, viz. *beo, creo, screo, meo, calceo, laqueo, nauseo, nucleo*. There are Twenty four in *io* of the *First*, viz. *amplio, basio, brevio, concilio, crucio, furio, glacio, hio, lanio, luxurio, macio, nuncio, pio, propitio, radio, repudio, satio, saucio, socio, somnio, spolio, suavio*, or rather *suavior, vario, vitio*; with some other less common, as, *decurio, succenturio, fascio, retalio, vario, tertio*, &c. and Twelve of of the *Third*, viz. *capio, facio, jacio, lacio, specio, fodio, fugio, cupio, rapio, sapio, pario, quatio*, with their Compounds.

It is not, in my Opinion, necessary to trouble the Learner with a particular Account how the respective Changes in the Moods, Tenses, Numbers and Persons are made; they being obvious from the Examples above, in which I have distinguished them from the *Body*, or *Essential Part* of the *Verb* by a *Division* or *Hyphen*. And perhaps this alone, without any other particular Rule, might be a sufficient Direction. For to conjugate one Verb by the Example of another, we have no more to do, but instead of the *Essential Part* of the one (which is all that stands before *o, eo*, or *io*, of the *Present* of the *Indicative*) to substitute the *Essential Part* of the other, and then to add to it the additional Syllables it receives

in Conjugation as before.   Only we are to advert, 1. That in the P̄
terites and *Supines*, and the *Parts* that come from them, we are to recko̅
all before *i* and *um* for the Body of the Verb, adding the ufual Syllabl̄
to it, as in the *Active Voice* of *Lego*. 2. In Verbs in *io* we are to reta̅
or omit the *i*, as in *Note* 1.

There is yet another way of the Formation of Verbs, differing on̄
from the Firft Method in this, that what Parts according to it are form̄
ed from the Infinitive, are by this formed from the Firft or Second P̄
fon of the Prefent of the Indicative. But tho' this may be the more ̄
tural Way, yet the other is more eafy and uniform.

De Verbis Irregularibus.	Of Irregular Verbs.
IRREGULARIA Verba vulgò recenfentur octo, viz. Sum, Eo, Queo, Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero & Fio, cum Compofitis.	THE IRREGULAR Verb̄ are commonly reckon̄ Eight, viz. Sum, Eo, Que̅ Volo, Nolo, Malo, Fero a̅ Fio, with their Compounds.

S U M.

Sum, fui, effe, *To be.*

INDICATIVUS.		SUBJUNCTIVUS.	
	Præfens.		
Sum,	*I am,*	Sim,	*I may or can be,*
Es,	*Thou art,*	Sis,	*Thou mayft or canft be,*
Eft :	*He is :*	Sit :	*He may or can be :*
Sumus,	*We are,*	Simus,	*We may or can be,*
Eftis,	*Ye are,*	Sitis,	*Ye may or can be,*
Sunt,	*They are.*	Sint,	*They may or can be.*
	Imperfectum.		
Eram,	*I was,*	Effem,	*I might, &c. be,*
Eras,	*Thou waft,*	Effes,	*Thou mighteft be,*
Erat :	*He was :*	Effet :	*He might be :*
Eramus,	*We were,*	Effemus,	*We might be,*
Er tis,	*Ye were,*	Effetis,	*Ye might be,*
Erant,	*They were.*	Effent,	*They might be.*
	Perfectum.		
Fui,	*I have been,*	Fuerim,	*I may have been,*
Fuifti,	*Thou haft been,*	Fueris,	*Thou mayft have been,*
Fuit :	*He hath been :*	Fuerit :	*He may have been :*
Fuimus,	*We have been,*	Fuerimus,	*We may have been.*
Fuiftis,	*Ye have been,*	Fueritis,	*Ye may have been,*
Fuerunt,	*They have been.*	Fuerint,	*They may have been.*
vel -ere			*Plu*̄

Plusquam-perfectum.

...eram,	I had been,	Fuiſſem,	I might, &c. have
...eras,	Thou hadſt been,	Fuiſſes,	Thou mighteſt have
...erat:	He had been:	Fuiſſet:	He might have
...eramus,	We had been,	Fuiſſemus,	We might have
...eratis,	Ye had been,	Fuiſſetis,	Ye might have
...erant,	They had been.	Fuiſſent,	They might have

or had been.

Futurum.

...o,	I ſhall or will be,	Fuero,	I ſhall have been.
...is,	Thou ſhalt or wilt be,	Fueris,	Thou ſhalt have been.
...it:	He ſhall or will be:	Fuerit:	He ſhall have been:
...imus,	We ſhall or will be,	Fuerimus,	We ſhall have been,
...itis,	Ye ſhall or will be,	Fueritis,	Ye ſhall have been,
...unt,	They ſhall or will be.	Fuerint,	They ſhall have been.

IMPERATIVUS.

Es *vel*		Be thou.
Eſto,		
Eſto:		Let him be.
Eſte *vel*		Be ye.
Eſtote,		
Sunto,		Let them be.

INFINITIVUS.

*Præſ.*Eſſe,   To be.
*Perf.*Fuiſſe,   To have been.
Fut. Futurum } To be about to
eſſe *vel* fuiſſe. } be.

PARTICIPIUM.

Fut. Futurus,   About to be.

The Compounds of SUM are, *Adſum, abſum, deſum, interſum, præſum,* *ſum, ſubſum, ſuperſum, inſum, proſum* & *poſſum.* The firſt eight are conjugated as the ſimple SUM: *Inſum* wants the Preterite and its Deſcendants; for we do not uſe *Inſui, infuiſti, infueram,* &c.

¶ PROSUM, *To do good,* has a *d* where SUM begins with *e*; as;

IND. { *Pr.* Pro-ſum, prod-es, prod-eſt: pro-ſumus, prod-eſtis, pro-ſunt.
{ *Im.* Prod-eram, prod-eras, prod-erat: prod-eramus, &c.
SUB. *Im.* Prod-eſſem, prod-eſſes, prod eſiet: prod-eſſemus, &c.
IMPERAT. Prod-eſto, prod-eſte,   INFINIT. *Præſ.* Prod-eſſe.

POSSUM ſhould be *pot-ſum* (as being compounded of *potis,* able, and *ſum*) but for the better Sound *t* is changed into *ſ* before another *s*, and retained before any other Letter: And for the ſame Reaſon *ſ* is always taken away. *Poſſim* and *poſſe* are contracted for *Poteſſim, poteſſe,* which yet are to be found in ſome old Authors; thus,

¶ Poſſum, potui, poſſe, *To be able.*

INDICATIVUS.

Pr. Poſſum, potes, poteſt: poſſumus, poteſtis, poſſunt.
Im. Poteram, poteras, poterat: poteramus, poteratis, poterant.
Per. Potui, potuiſti, potuit: potuimus, potuiſtis, potuerunt *v.* uere.
Pl. Potueram, potueras, potuerat: potueramus, potueratis, potuerant.
Fu. Potero, poteris, poterit: poterimus, poteritis, poterunt,

D 3   SUB.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præf. Possim,	possis,	possit :	possimus,	possitis,	possint.
Imp. Possem,	posses,	posset :	possemus,	possetis,	possent.
Perf. Potuerim,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.
Pluf. Potuissem,	potuisses,	potuisset :	potuissemus,	potuissetis,	potuissent.
Fut. Potuero,	potueris,	potuerit :	potuerimus,	potueritis,	potuerint.

INFINITIVUS.

Præf. Posse. *Per.* Potuisse. *The rest wanting.*

E O.

Eo, ivi, itum, ire, *To go.*

INDICATIVUS.

Præf. Eo,	is,	it ;	imus,	itis,	eunt.
Imp. Ibam,	ibas,	ibat ;	ibamus,	ibatis,	ibant.
Perf. Ivi,	ivisti,	ivit ;	ivimus,	ivistis,	iverunt, ivere.
Pluf. Iveram,	iveras,	iverat ;	iveramus,	iveratis,	iverant.
Fut. Ibo,	ibis,	ibit ;	ibimus,	ibitis,	ibunt.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præf. Eam,	eas,	eat ;	eamus,	eatis,	eant.
Imp. Irem,	ires,	iret ;	iremus,	iretis,	irent.
Ierf. Iverim,	iveris,	iverit ;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.
Pluf. Ivissem,	ivisses,	ivisset ;	ivissemus,	ivissetis,	ivissent.
Fut. Ivero,	iveris,	iverit ;	iverimus,	iveritis,	iverint.

IMPERATIVUS.   INFINITIVUS.

Præf. { i,   ito ; { ite,   eunto. | *Præf.* Ire.
       { ito,   { itote, | *Perf.* Ivisse.
                                         | *Fut.* Iturum esse *vel* fuisse.

PARTICIPIA.   SUPINA.   GERUNDIA.

Præf. Iens, *Gen.* euntis. | 1. Itum. | Eundum.
Fut. Iturus, -a, -um. | 2. Itu. | Eundi.
                                         | Eundo,

Note, 1. That in general EO is a Verb of the fourth Conjugation.

Note, 2. That of old, Verbs of the Fourth had their Imperfect in *i-bam*, and Future in *ibo*, of which there are many Examples in *Plautus* and *Terence*, and some in *Virgil* and *Horace*.

After the same Manner the Compounds of EO are conjugated, viz. *Adeo, abeo, exeo, obeo, redeo, subeo, pereo, coeo, ineo, præeo, anteeo, prodeo, prætereo, transeo ; Adibam, adibo, adiens, adeuntis, adeundum,* &c. But *ambio* is a regular Verb of the Fourth Conjugation.

Note,

Note, That in the Compounds, *ivi, ivifti*, &c. are feldom ufed, but they are contracted into *ii, iifti*; as, *adii, adufti*, and fometimes *adifti*: So *adieram, adierim*, &c.

QUEO, *I can*, and NEQUEO, *I cannot*, are conjugated the fame Way as EO; they only want the *Imperative* and the *Gerunds*; and the *Participles* are fcarcely in Ule.

V O L O.
Volo, volui, velle, *To will*, or *be willing*.
I N D I C A T I V U S.

Præf. Volo,   vis,   vult;   volumus, vultis,   volunt.
Imp. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Perf. Volui,   -uifti, -uit;   -uimus,   -uiftis, -uerunt,uere.
Pluf. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Volam,   voles,   volet; volemus, voletis, volent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Præf. Velim,   velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint.
Imp. Vellem,   velles, vellet; vellemus, velletis, vellent.
Perf. Vol-uerim, -ueris -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluf. Vol-uiffem,-uiffes, -uiffet; -uiffemus, -uiffetis, -uiffent.
Fut. Vol-uero, -ueris,-uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

I N F I N I T I V U S.   P A R T I C I P I U M.
Præf. Velle. *Perf.* Voluiffe.   *Præf.* Volens.
The reft are wanting.

N O L O.
Nolo, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling*.
I N D I C A T I V U S.

Pr. Nolo,   non-vis, non-vult; nolumus, non-vultis,nolunt.
Im. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat;   -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Nol-ui,   -uifti, -uit;   -uimus, -uiftis, -uerunt, uere.
Pl. Nol-ueram,-ueras, -uerat; -ueramus,-ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Nolam,   noles, nolet;   nolemus, noletis, nolent.

S U B J U N C T I V U S.

Præf. Nolim, nolis, nolit; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.
Imp. Nollem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nollent.
            D 4   *Perf.*

Perf. Nol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -eritis, -uerint.
Pluf. Nol-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

IMPERATIVUS. *INFINITIVUS.* *PARTICIPIUM.*

Praf. { Noli, { nolite, | *Pr.* Nolle. *Praf.* Nolens.
{ Nolito: { nolitote. | *Per.* Noluisse. *The rest wanting.*

M A L O.
Malo, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*
I N D I C A T I V U S.
Praf. Malo, mavis, mavult; malumus, mavultis, malunt.
Imp. Mal-ebam, -ebas -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
Per. Mal-ui, uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt-uere.
Pluf. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.
Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et; &c. *This is scarcely in Use.*

S U B J U N C T I V U S.
Praf. Malim, malis, malit; malimus, malitis, malint.
Imp. Mallem, malles, mallet; mallemus, malletis, mallent.
Perf Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Pluf. Mal-uissem, -uisses, -uisset; -uissemus, -uissetis, -uissent.
Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

I N F I N I T I V U S.
Praf. Malle. *Perf.* Maluisse.

NOTE, That *Volo, Nolo* and *Malo,* retain something of the Third Conjugation, for *Vis, vult, vultis* are contracted of *Vous, volit, volins;* and *o* is changed into *u,* for of old they said *Volt, voltis.*
Nolo is compounded of *Non-volo,* and *Malo* of *magis volo.*

F E R O.
V O X   A C T I V A.
Fero, tuli, latum, ferre, *To bring* or *suffer.*
I N D I C A T I V U S.
Praf. Fero, fers, fert; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.
Imp. Ferebam, ferebas, ferebat; ferebamus, ferebatis, ferebant.
Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit; tulimus, tulistis, tulerunt, ere.
Pluf. Tuleram, tuleras, tulerat; tuleramus, tuleratis, tulerant.
Fut. Feram, feres, feret; feremus, feretis, ferent.

S U B-

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præf. Feram,   feras   ferat;   feramus,   feratis,   ferant.
Imp. Ferrem,   ferres,   ferret;   ferremus,   ferretis,   ferrent.
Per. Tul-erim,   -eris,   -erit;   -erimus,   -eritis,   -erint.
Pluf. Tul-iſſem,   -iſſes,   -iſſet;   -iſſemus,   -iſſetis,   -iſſent.
Fut. Tul-ero,   -eris,   -erit;   -erimus,   -eritis,   -erint.

IMPERATIVUS.   INFINITIVUS.

Præf. { Fer, ferto; { ferte, ferunto.   *Pr.* Ferre.
     { Ferto,   { fertote,   *Per.* Tuliſſe.
                                   Fut. Laturum eſſe
                                      vel fuiſſe.

PARTICIPIA.   SUPINA.   GERUNDIA.

Præf. Ferens.   1. Latum.   Ferendum,
Fut. Laturus, -a -um.   2. Latu.   Ferendi,
                                        Ferendo.

VOX PASSIVA.

Feror,   latus,   ferri.

INDICATIVUS.

Præf. Feror, { ferris, fertur; ferimur, ferimini, feruntur.
           { ferre,

Imp. Fer-ebar, { -ebaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
             { -ebare,

Perf. Latus ſum *vel* fui, latus es *vel* fuiſti, &c.
Pluf. Latus eram *vel* fueram, latus eras *vel* fueras, &c.

Fut. Ferar, { fereris, feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.
          { ferere,

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Præf. Ferar, { feraris, feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.
          { ferare,

Imp. Ferrer, { ferreris, ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.
          { ferrere,

Perf. Latus ſim *vel* fuerim, latus ſis *vel* fueris, &c.
Pluf. Latus eſſem *vel* fuiſſem, latus eſſes *vel* fuiſſes, &c.
Fut. Latus fuero, latus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.

Præf. { Ferre, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.
     { Fertor,

INFINITIVUS.   PARTICIPIA.

Præf. Ferri,   *Perf.* Latus,   -a,   -um.
Perf. Latum eſſe *vel* fuiſſe.   *Fut.* Ferendus,   -a,   -um.
Fut. Latum iri.

                                            NOTE,

NOTE, That *Fero* is a Verb of the Third Conjugation, *Fers, fert, fertis, ferto, ferte, ferrem, ferre, ferris, fertur, fertor*, being contracted of *Feris, ferit, feritis, ferito, ferite, fererem, ferere, fereris, feritur* and *feritor*.

Also *Fer* is contracted of *fere:* Which in like Manner has happened to the Imperatives of *Dico, duco, facio*, they having *dic, duc, fac*, instead of *dice, duce, face.*

The Compounds of *Fero* are conjugated the same Way as the Simple; as, *Affero, attuli, allatum; Aufero, abstuli, ablatum; Differo, distuli, dilatum; Confero, contuli, collatum; Infero, intuli, illatum; Offero, obtuli, oblatum; Effero, extuli, elatum;* So *Circumfero, perfero, transfero, defero, profero, antefero, prafero.*

FIO.
Fio, factus, fieri, *To be made*, or *to become.*

INDICATIVUS.

Praf. Fio,   fis,   fit;   fimus,   fitis,   fiunt.
Imp. Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.
Perf. Factus fum *vel* fui, factus es *vel* fuisti, &c.
Pluf. Factus eram *vel* fueram, factus eras *vel* fueras, &c.
Fut. Fiam,   fies,   fiet;   fiemus,   fietis,   fient.

SUBJUNCTIVUS.

Praf. Fiam,   fias,   fiat;   fiamus,   fiatis,   fiant.
Imp. Fierem, fieres, fieret; fieremus, fieretis, fierent.
Perf. Factus sim *vel* fuerim, factus fis *vel* fueris, &c.
Pluf. Factus essem *vel* fuissem, factus esses *vel* fuisses, &c.
Fut. Factus fuero, factus fueris, &c.

IMPERATIVUS.   INFINITIVUS.
Praf. { Fi, * fito ; { fite, fiunto   Pr. Fieri.
        { Fito,   { fitote,   Per. Factum esse *vel* fuisse.
                                            Fut. Factum iri.

PARTICIPIA.   SUPINUM.
Per. Factus,   -a, -um,   Factu.
Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um,

---

* Tho' *Fi* is rejected by some Grammarians of great Note, yet we have given it Place here, not only because it is to be found in *Plautus*, but also in *Horace, Lib.* 2. *Sat.* 5. *ver.* 38. *Fi cognitor ipse*, according to the best MSS. and Editions.

NOTE,

NOTE, 1. That *Fio* is the Paſſive of *Facio*, To make, (which is regular) inſtead of *Facior*, which is not in uſe: Yet the Compounds of *Facio*, which change *a* into *i* are regular; as, *afficior, affectus, affici*; *perficior, perfectus, perfici*.

NOTE, 2. That the Compounds of *Facio*, with Verbs, Nouns or Adverbs, retain the *a*, and have their Imperative Act. *fac*, and their Paſſive Form (when uſed) *fio*; as, *Calefacio, lacrifacio, benefacio; calefac, calefio*, &c. But theſe compounded with a Prepoſition change the *a* in *i*, and have *fice* and *ficior*. There are ſome compounded of *Facio* and a Noun, where *facio* is changed into *fico* of the Firſt Conjugation; as *magnifico, ſignifico*.

To the *Irregular* Verbs may be reduced EDO, *to eat*, which in ſome of its Parts falls in with the Verb *Sum*; thus,

IND. *Praſ.* Edo, es, eſt; - - - - eſtis, - - - -
SUB. *Imp.* Eſſem, eſſes, eſſet; eſſemus, eſſetis, eſſent.
IMP. Es *vel* eſto, - - - eſte *vel* eſtote. INFIN. Eſſe.

Likewiſe its Compounds, *Comedo, comes, comeſt*, &c. and *Exedo, exes, exeſt*, &c. But all theſe may likewiſe be regularly conjugated, *Edo, edis, edit*, &c. *Ederem, ederes, ederet*, &c.

Of Defective Verbs.

THO' ſome of the *Irregular* Verbs already mentioned want ſome of their Parts, and upon that Account may be called alſo *Defective* Verbs, yet by DEFECTIVE *Verbs* here we chiefly underſtand ſuch as want conſiderable Branches, or are uſed only in few *Tenſes* and *Perſons*. We ſhall ſet down theſe that moſt frequently occur. I. AIO, *I ſay*; INQUAM, *I ſay*; FOREM, *I ſhould be*; AUSIM, *I dare*; FAXIM, *I'll ſee to it*, or *I will do it*; AVE and SALVE, *God ſave you, Hail, Good-morrow*; CEDO, *tell or give me*; QUÆSO, *I pray*.

IND. { *Praſ.* Aio, ais, ait; - - - - - aiunt.
{ *Imp.* Ai-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.
{ *Perf.* - - - aiſti, - - - - - - - - -
SUB. *Praſ.* - - - aias, aiat; - - - - - aiatis, aiant.
IMPERAT. ai. [PARTICIP. *Praſ.* aiens.]

INDIC. { *Praſ.* Inquam, inquis, inquit; inquimus, inquitis, inquiunt.
{ *Imp.* - - - - - inquiebat; - - - - - - inquiebant.
{ *Perf.* - - - inquiſti, - - - - - - - - - -
{ *Fut.* - - - inquies, inquiet; - - - - - - - -
IMPERAT. inque, -ito. PARTICIP. *Praſ.* inquiens.

SUB. { *Imp.* } Forem, fores, foret; foremus, foretis, forent.
{ *Pluſ.* }
INF. Fore, *to be*, or *to be about to be*, the ſame with *futurum eſſe*.

SUB. { *Praſ.* Auſim, auſis, auſit; - - - -
{ *Perf.* Faxim, faxis, faxit; - - faxint.
{ *Fut.* Faxo, faxis, faxit; - - faxitis, faxint.
NOTE, That *faxim* and *faxo* are uſed inſtead of *fecerim* and *fecero*.

IMPERAT. { Ave, { avete, } { INFIN. [avere.
{ Aveto, { avetote. } { [ſalvere.
{ Salve, { ſalvete, } {
{ Salveto, { ſalvetote. } {
{ Cedo, cedite.
INDIC. *Praſ.* Quæſo, quæſumus.

II. Theſe

II. These three Verbs, ODI, MEMINI, COEPI, have only the *Prete-rite* Tense and what is formed from it, and therefore are by some called PRETERITIVE Verbs; thus,

Odi,   *oderam*,   *oderim*;   *odissem*,   *odero*,   *odisse*.
Memini, *memineram*, *meminerim*, *meminissem*, *meminero*, *meminisse*.
Cœpi,   *cœperam*,   *cœperim*,   *cœpissem*,   *cœpero*,   *cœpisse*.

But under these they comprehend also the Signification of the other Ten-ses; as, *Memini*, I remember, *or* I have remembred; *Memineram*, I re-membred, *or* I had remembred, &c. So *Odi*, I hate, *or* I have hated; *Cœpi*, I begin, *or* I have begun. Tho' I am not fully satisfied as to this last, for I do not know any Example where *Cœpi* doth clearly signify the Present Tense.

Memini hath also the Imperative *Memento*, Remember thou; *Mementote*, Remember ye. Some add *Meminens*, Remembring, which is scarcely to be imitated.

To these some add NOVI, because it frequently hath the Signification of the Present, *I know*, as well as, *I have known*; tho' it comes from *No-sco*, which is complete.

NOTE, 1. That *Odientes* is to be found in *Petronius*; *Odiatur* in *Seneca*; *Cœvio* in *Plautus* and *Terence*. See *Voss. Analog. Lib.* III. *Cap.* 39.

NOTE, 2. That the Participles *Cœptus* and *Osus*, with its Compounds *Perosus, exosus*, are in Use among the best Authors; but *Perodi* and *Exo-di* are not.

III. *Faris*, To speak, wants the first *Person* of the *Present Indic.* and per-haps the whole *Present* of the *Subjunctive*; for we do not say *For* or *Fer*, and rarely *Feris, fatur*, &c. So likewise *Daris* and *Deris*, but not *Dor* or *Der*, To be given. The Compounds of the first, as, *Effor, affor*, are rare; but the Compounds of the other, as *Addor, Reddor*, are common.

IV. Most of the other Defective Verbs are but single Words, and rare-ly to be found but among Poets; as, *Infit*, he begins; *Defit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a Verb with the Conjunction *Si*, as *Sis*, for *Si vis*, If thou wilt; *Sultis*, for *Si vultis*, If ye will; *Sodes*, for *Si audes*, If thou darest.

Of Impersonal Verbs.

THese are also a kind of *Defective* Verbs, which for the most part are used only in the *Third Person Sing.* They have the Sign IT before them in English; as, *Pœnitet*, it repents; *Placet*, it pleases: And are thus conjugated;

	Præs.	Imperf.	Perfect.	Plusquam.	Futur.
IND.	Pœnitet,	pœnitebat,	pœnituit,	pœnituerat,	pœnitebit.
SUB.	Pœniteat,	pœniteret,	pœnituerit,	pœnituisset,	pœnituerit.
INF.	Pœnitere,	- - -	pœnituisse.		

Most Verbs may be used impersonally in the Passive Voice, especially such as otherwise have no Passive; as,

	Præs.	Imperf.	Perfect.	Plusquam.	Fut.
Ind.	Pugnatur,	pugnabatur,	pugnatum { est, fuit,	-atum { erat, fuerat,	pugnabitur.
Sub.	Pugnetur,	pugnaretur,	pugnatum { sit, fuerit,	-atum { esset, fuisset,	-atumfuerit.
Inf.	Pugnari,	- - - -	pugnatum { esse, fuisse.	- - - -	pugnatum iri.

NOTE,

NOTE, 1. That IMPERSONALS are applied to any *Person* or *Number*, by putting that which stands before other Verbs, after the Impersonals in the Cases which they govern; as, *Pænitet me, te, illum,* I repent, thou repentest, he repenteth, instead of *Ego pæniteo*, &c. which is scarcely Latin. *Placet mihi, tibi, illi,* It pleases me, thee, him; or, I please, thou pleasest, &c. *Pugnatur à me, à te, ab illo,* I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c.

NOTE, 2. The *Impersonals* are not used in the *Imperative*, but instead of it we take the *Subjunctive*.

NOTE, 3. That *Impersonal* Verbs are very often used *personally*, especially in the *Plural* Number; as, *Accidit, Contingit, Evenit, Pertinet, Decet, Dolet, Licet, Nocet, Patet, Placet, Præstat,* &c. For we say, *Tu mihi sola places; Nulli noceo; Multa homini accidunt, contingunt, eveniunt; Parvum parva decent,* &c. But 'tis to be remarked, that they are generally *Impersonal*, when an *Infinitive* or *Subjunctive* Mood follows; for tho' I can say, *Tu places mihi,* yet I cannot say, *Si places audire,* but *Si placet tibi audire.* Again we cannot say, *Ego contigi esse domi,* but *Me contigit esse domi,* or *Mihi contigit esse domi.* Likewise *Evenit illum mori,* or *Ut ille moreretur;* but not *Ille evenit mori.*

[I shall not here enquire what is the Word *understood to* Impersonal *Verbs, whether it is a Noun of the like* Signification*; as,* Pugna pugnatur, *or the Word* Res *or* Negotium, *or the* Infinitive *Mood. Tho' I incline to think that any one of these will not answer to them all, but that there are some to which the first, to others the second, and to others the third, may be most fitly understood, as the Nature of the Verb and good Sense shall direct us. This we are sure of, that the Word* understood *can never be a* Person *properly so called, but a* Thing*; for which* Reason*, and the Want of the two primary* Persons, viz. *the first and second, they are called* Impersonal*, tho' some are much offended with the* Name.]*

CAP. IV.
De Participio.

TRia sunt præcipuè consideranda in Participio, viz. *Tempus, Significatio* & *Declinatio.*

I. Tempora Participiorum sunt Tria, *Præsens, Præteritum* & *Futurum.*

Participia { Præs. Præt. Fut. } Temp. definunt in { *ns.* *tus, sus, xus.* *rus, dus.* }

II. Significatio Participiorum est vel *Activa* vel *Passiva,* vel *Neutra,* ad modum verborum à quibus descendunt.

CHAP. IV.
Of Participle.

THere are three Things especially to be considered in a Participle, viz. Time, Signification *and* Declension.

I. The Tenses of *Participles* are three,, the Present, Preterite *and* Future.

of the Particip. { *Pres.* *Pret.* *Fut.* } Tense end in { *ns,* *tus, sus, xus* *rus, dus.* }

II. The *Signification of Participles is either* Active *or* Passive, *or* Neuter, *after the Manner of the Verbs from which they come.*

Parti-

Participia
- in *ns* & *rus* plerumque sunt *Activa*.
- in *dus* semper *Passiva*.
- in *tus, sus, xus*, plerumque sunt *Passiva*, interdum verò *Activa*, vel etiam *communia*.

III. Omnia Participia sunt Adjectiva: quæ desinunt in *ns* sunt *Tertia Declinationis*, reliqua autem omnia *Prima* & *Secunda*.

Participles
- in *ns* and *rus* are generally Active.
- in *dus* always Passive.
- in *tus, sus, xus*, are generally Passive, sometimes Active, or also Common.

III. *All Participles are Adjectives: These which end in* ns *are of the* Third Declension, *but all the rest are of the* First *and* Second.

A PARTICIPLE is a Kind of Adjective formed from a Verb, which in its Signification always imports some Time.

It is so called, because it *partakes* of a Noun and a Verb, having Genders and Cases from the one, Time and Signification from the other, and Number from both.

1. ACTIVE Verbs [*See Chap.* IX.] have two *Participles*, one of the *Present* Time ending in *ns*; as, *Amans*, Loving: And another of the *Future* ending in *rus*; as, *Amaturus*, About to love.

2. PASSIVE Verbs have likewise two *Participles*, one of the *Preterite* ending in *tus, sus*, or *xus*; as, *Amatus*, Loved; *Visus*, Seen; *Flexus*, Bowed, (to which some add one in *nus*, *viz. Mortuus*, Dead:) And another of the *Future* ending in *dus*; as, *Amandus*, To be loved.

3. NEUTER Verbs have two *Participles*, as the Active; as, *Sedens*, Sitting, *Sessurus*, About to sit.

4. *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verbs have frequently three *Participles*, as, *Carens*, Wanting, *Cariturus*, About to want, *Carendus*, To be wanted; *Dolens*, Grieving, *Doliturus*, About to grieve, *Dolendus*, To be grieved: And sometimes four; as, *Vigilans*, Watching, *Vigilaturus*, About to watch, *Vigilatus*, Watched, *Vigilandus*, To be watched.

5. DEPONENT and COMMON Verbs have generally four *Participles*; as, *Loquens*, Speaking, *Locuturus*, About to speak, *Locutus*, Having spoken, *Loquendus*, To be spoken; *Dignans*, Vouchsafing, *Dignaturus*, About to vouchsafe, *Dignatus*, Having vouchsafed, *or* being vouchsafed, *Dignandus*, To be vouchsafed.

NOTE, 1. That in some *Deponent* Verbs the *Participle Perfect* hath both an *Active* and *Passive* Signification, tho' that of the Verb itself is only Active; as, *Testatus*, having testified, *or* being testified. So *Mentitus, Meditatus, Oblitus*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That it is essential to a Participle, I. That it come immediately from a Verb. II. That in its Signification it also include Time. Therefore *Tunicatus*, Coated, *Larvatus*, Masked, and such like, are not Participles; because they come from Nouns, and not from Verbs. And *Ignarus*, Ignorant, *Elegans*, Neat, *Circumspectus*, circumspect, *Tacitus*, Silent, *Falsus*, False, *Profusus*, Prodigal, &c. are not Participles, because they do not signify Time.

There

There are a Kind of Adjective Nouns ending in UNDUS, which approach very near to the Nature of *Participles*, such as *Errabundus, Ludibundus, Populabundus.* They are formed from the *Imperf.* of the *Indic.* and their Signification is much the same with the *Participle* of the *Present* Time; only they signify *Abundance*, or a great deal of the Action, according to *A. Gellius, Lib.* 11. *Cap.* 15. or, according to others, they signify the same with the *Participles* of *Frequentative* Verbs, when these are not in Use. See *Gronovius* on *Gellius*, as above cited.

APPENDIX of Gerunds and Supines.

GERUNDS and SUPINES (which, because of their near Relation to Verbs, are by some not improperly called *Participial* Words) are a Sort of *Substantive* Nouns, expressing the Action of the Verb in general, or in the Abstract. GERUNDS are *Substantives* of the second Declension, and complete in all their Cases, except the *Vocative*. SUPINES are Substantives of the fourth Declension, having only two Cases, the *Accusative* in UM, which makes the *First Supine*, and the *Ablative* in U, which makes the *Second.*

[*Vossius, Lib.* 8. *Cap.* 54. *thinks that the* Last Supine *may sometimes be* a Dative; *as,* Durum tactu, *i. e.* tactui; *For the Datives of the* Fourth *Declension of old ended in* u. *Also Lib.* 7. *Cap.* 8. *he takes Notice that tho'* these Supines have sometimes other Cases, *(as* irrisui esse) *yet they are only reckoned Supines by Grammarians, when the* First *come after Verbs of Motion, and the* Second *after Adjective Nouns : Thus* dignus irrisu *is a Supine (according to them)* Non *sine* irrisu *audientium, is not.*]

De Indeclinabilibus Partibus Orationis.	Of the Indeclinable Parts of Speech.
### CAP. V. *De Adverbio.*	### CHAP. V. Of 𝕬𝕯𝖛𝖊𝖗𝖇.
IN ADVERBIO potissimùm spectanda est ejus *Significatio.*	IN an *ADVERB* is chiefly to be considered its Signification.
Adverbiorum Significationes variæ sunt : earum verò præcipuæ ad sequentia capita revocari possunt.	*The Significations of Adverbs are various : But the chief of them may be reduced to the following Heads.*

ADVERB is an indeclinable Part of Speech, which being joined to a Noun, Verb, or other Adverb, expresses some Circumstance, Quality or Manner of their Signification.

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time* and *Order.*

1. Adverbs

1. Adverbs of PLACE are fivefold, viz. Adverbs signifying Motion,

(1) In a Place (or Rest)

UBI?	*Where,*
Hic,	*Here,*
Illic,	
Isthic,	*There.*
Ibi,	
Intus,	*Within.*
Foris,	*Without.*
Ubique,	*Every where.*
Nusquam,	*No where.*
Alicubi,	*Some where.*
Alibi,	*Else where.*
Ubivis,	*Any where.*
Ibidem,	*In the same Place.*

(2) to a Place

Quo?	*Whither.*
Huc,	*Hither.*
Illuc,	
Isthuc,	*Thither.*
Intro,	*To within.*
Foras,	*To without.*
Eo,	*To that Place.*
Alio,	*To another Place.*
Aliquo,	*To some Place.*
Eodem,	*To the same Place.*

(3) towards a Place

QUORSUM,	*Whitherward.*
Versus,	*Towards.*
Horsum,	*Hitherward.*
Illorsum,	*Thitherward.*
Sursum,	*Upward.*
Deorsum,	*Downward.*
Antrorsum,	*Forward.*
Retrorsum,	*Backward.*
Dextrosum,	*To the right Hand.*
Sinistrorsum,	*To the left Hand.*

(4) from a Place

UNDE,	*From whence.*
Hinc,	*From hence.*
Illinc,	
Istinc,	*From thence.*
Inde,	
Aliunde,	*From elsewhere.*
Alicunde,	*From some Place.*
Sicunde,	*If from any Place.*
Utrinque,	*On both Sides.*
Superne,	*From above.*
Inferne,	*From below.*
Cœlitus,	*From Heaven.*
Funditus,	*From the Ground.*

(5) through, or by a Place

QUA?	*Which Way?*
Hac,	*This Way.*
Illac,	*That Way.*
Isthac,	
Alia,	*Another Way.*

2. Adverbs of TIME are threefold, viz. such as signify,

(1) Being in Time either

1 Present.

Nunc,	*Now.*
Hodie,	*To-day.*

2. Past.

Tunc,	
Tum,	*Then.*
Heri,	*Yesterday.*
Dudum,	
Pridem,	*Heretofore.*
Pridie,	*The Day before.*
Nudius tertius,	*Three Days ago.*
Nuper,	*Lately.*

3. Future, remote, very near.

Jamjam,	*Presently.*
Mox,	*Immediately.*
Statim,	*By and by.*
Protinus,	*Instantly.*
Illico,	*Straightway.*
Cras,	*To-morrow.*
Postridie,	*The Day after.*
Perendie,	*Two Days hence.*
Nondum,	*Not yet.*

4. Indefinite.

QUANDO?	*When?*
Aliquando,	
Nonnunquam,	*Sometimes.*
Interdum,	
Semper,	*Ever.*
Nunquam,	*Never.*
Interim,	*In the mean time.*
Quotidie,	*Daily.*

(2) Continuance of Time.

Diu,	*Long.*
QUAMDIU?	*How long?*
Tamdiu,	*So long.*
Jamdiu,	
Jamdudum,	*Long ago.*
Jampridem,	

(3) Vicissitude or Repetition of Time.

1. Indefinite.

QUOTIES?	*How often?*
Sæpe,	*Often.*
Raro,	*Seldom.*
Toties,	*So often.*
Aliquoties,	*For several times.*
Vicissim,	
Alternatim,	*By Turns.*
Rursus,	
Iterum,	*Again.*
Subinde,	
Identidem,	*Ever and anon.*

2. Definite, or in Number.

Semel,	*Once,*
Bis,	*Twice.*
Ter,	*Thrice.*
Quater,	*Four times, &c.*

3. Adverbs

3. *Adverbs* of ORDER; as,

de, *Then.*	Deinceps, *So forth.*	Primò, -ùm,	*First.*
inde, *Thereafter.*	Denuo, *Of new.*	Secundò, -ùm,	*Secondly.*
hinc, *Henceforth.*	Denique, *Finally.*	Tertiò, -ùm,	*Thirdly.*
rro, *Moreover.*	Postremo, *Lastly.*	Quartò, -ùm,	*Fourthly.*

II. The other *Adverbs* expressing QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are her *Absolute* or *Comparative.*

1. QUALITY simply, as, Bene, *well*; male, *ill*; fortiter, *bravely*: And innumerable others that come from Adjective *Nouns* or *Participles.*

2. CERTAINTY; as, Profectò, certè, sanè, planè, næ, utique, ita, etiam, *truly, verily, yes*; quidni, *why not?* omnino, *certainly.*

3. CONTINGENCE; as, Forte, forsan, fortassis, fors, *happily, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.*

4. NEGATION; as, Non, haud, *not*; nequaquam, *not at all*; neutiquam, *by no means*; minime, *nothing less.*

5. PROHIBITION; as, Ne, *not.*

6. SWEARING; as, Hercle, pol, edepol, mecastor, *by Hercules, by Pollux,* &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, Utpote, videlicet, scilicet, nimirum, nempe, *to wit, namely.*

8. SEPARATION; as, Seorsum, *apart*; separatim, *separately*; sigillatim, *one by one*; viritim, *Man by Man*; oppidatim, *Town by Town,* &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, Simul, unà, pariter, *together*; generaliter, *generally*; universaliter, *universally*; plerumque, *for the most part.*

10. INDICATION or POINTING OUT; as, En, ecce, *lo, behold.*

11. INTERROGATION; as, Cur, quare, quamobrem, *why, wherefore?* Num, an, *whether?* Quomodo, qui, *how?* To which add, Ubi, quo, quorsum, unde, qua, quando, quamdiu, quoties.

1. EXCESS; as, Valde, maxime, magnopere, summopere, admodum, oppido, perquam, longe, *very much, exceedingly*; nimis, nimium, *too much*; prorsus, penitus, omnino, *altogether, wholly*; magis, *more*; melius, *better*; pejus, *worse*; fortius, *more bravely*; And optime, *best*; pessime, *worst*; fortissime, *most bravely*; and innumerable others of the *Comparative* and *Superlative* Degrees;

2. DEFECT; as, Ferme, ferè, propè, propemodum, penè, *almost*; parum, *little*; paullo, paullulum, *very little.*

3. PREFERENCE: as, potiùs, satiùs, *rather*; potissimùm, præcipuè, præsertim, *chiefly, especially*; imò, *yes, nay, nay rather.*

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, Ita, sic, adeo, *so*; ut, uti, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, ceu, tanquam, quasi, *as, as if*; quemadmodum, *even as*; satis, *enough*; itidem, *in like manner.*

5. UNLIKENESS or INEQUALITY; as, Aliter, secus, *otherwise*; alioqui or alioquin, *else*; nedum, *much more* or *much less.*

6. ABATEMENT; as, Sensim, paullatim, pedetentim, *by Degrees*; piece-meal; vix, *scarcely*; ægre, *hardly, with Difficulty.*

7. EXCLUSION; as, Tantùm, solùm, modò, tantummodo, dumtaxat, demum, *only.*

E   NOTE

NOTE, 1. That ADVERBS feem originally to have been contrived to exprefs compendioufly in one Word what muft otherwife have required two or more; as, *Sapienter,* wifely, for *cum fapientia*; *hic,* for *in hoc loco*; *femper,* for *in omni tempore*; *femel,* for *una vice*; *bis,* for *duabus vicibus*; *Hercule,* for *Hercules me juvet,* &c. Therefore many of them are nothing elfe but *Adjective Nouns* or *Pronouns,* having the *Prepofition* and *Subftantive* underftood, as, *quò, ei, eodem*; for *ad qua, ea, eadem* [*loca*]; or *cui, ei, eidem,* [*loco*]; for of old thefe Datives ended in *o.* Thus, *qua, hac, illac,* &c. are plain *Adjectives* in the *Abl. fing. fem.* the Word *via,* a Way, and *in,* being underftood. Many of them are Compounds; as, *quomodo,* i. e. *qua modo*; *quemadmodum,* i. e. *ad quem modum*; *quamobrem,* i. e. *ob quam rem*; *quare,* i. e. [*pro*] *qua re*; *quorfum,* i. e. *verfus quem* [*locum*]; *fcilicet,* i. e. *fcire licet*; *videlicet,* i. e. *videre licet*; *ilicet,* i. e. *ire licet*; *illuc,* i. e. *in loco*; *magnopere,* i. e. *magno opere*; *nimirum,* i. e. *ni* [*eft*] *mirum,* &c.

NOTE, 2. That of *Adverbs* of *Place,* thefe of the firft kind anfwer to the Queftion *ubi?* the fecond to *quo?* the third to *quorfum?* the fourth to *unde?* and the fifth to *qua?* To which might be added a fixth, *Quoufque,* how far? anfwered by *Ufque,* until; *Hucufque,* hitherto; *Eoufque,* fo far; *Hactenus,* hitherto, thus far; *Eatenus,* fo far as; *Quadantenus,* in fome meafure. But thefe are equally applied to *Place* and *Time.*

NOTE, 3. That *Adverbs* of *Time* of the firft kind anfwer to *quando?* of the fecond to *quamdiu,* and *quamdudum* or *quampridem?* of the third to *quoties?*

NOTE, 4. That *Adverbs* of *Quality* generally anfwer to the Queftion *quomodo?*

NOTE, 5. That fome *Adverbs* of *Time, Place* and *Order,* are frequently ufed the one for the other; as, *Ubi,* where *and* when; *inde,* from that Place, from that Time, thereafter, next; *hactenus,* thus far, with refpect to Place, Time or Order, &c. Other Adverbs alfo may be claffed under different Heads.

NOTE, 6. That fome *Adverbs* of *Time* are either *paft, prefent* or *future*; as, *Jam,* already, now, by and by; *Olim,* long ago, fometime hereafter.

NOTE, 7. That *Interrogative Adverbs* of *Time* and *Place* doubled, or with the Adjection *cunque* anfwer to the Englifh Adjection *foever*; as, *ubiubi,* or *ubicunque,* wherefoever; *quoquo* or *quocunque,* whitherfoever, &c. And the fame holds alfo in other *Interrogative* Words; as *quifquis,* or *quicunque,* whofoever; *quotquot,* or *quotcunque,* how many foever; *quantus quantus,* or *quantufcunque,* how great foever; *qualis qualis,* or *qualifcunque,* of what Kind or Quality foever; *ut ut,* or *utcunque,* however, or howfoever, &c.

CAP. VI.	CHAP. VI.
De Præpofitione.	Of Prepofition.
I. **P**Ræpofitiones quæ regunt Accufativum funt viginti octo, *viz.*	I. **T**He *Prepofitions which govern* the *Accufative are* twenty eight, viz,
Ad, *To.*	Adverfus,
Apud, *At.*	Adverfum, } *Againft.*
Ante, *Before.*	Contra,

Cis,
Citra, } *On this Side.*

Circa,
Circum, } *About.*

Erga, *Towards.*
Extra, *Without.*
Inter, *Between, among.*
Intra, *Within.*
Infra, *Beneath.*
Juxta, *Nigh to.*
Ob, *For.*

Propter, *For, hard by.*
Per, *By, through.*
Præter, *Besides, except.*
Penes, *In the Power of.*
Poft, *After.*
Pone, *Behind.*
Secus, *By, along.*
Secundum, *According to.*
Supra, *Above.*
Trans, *On the farther Side.*
Ultra, *Beyond.*

II. Præpofitiones quæ regunt Ablativum funt quindecim, nempe,

A,
Ab, } *From.*
Abs,

Abſque, *Without.*
Cum, *With.*
Clam, *Without the Know-*
        ledge of.
Coram, *Before.*

II. *The Prepofitions which govern the Ablative are fifteen, viz.*

De, *Of, concerning.*
E,
Ex, } *Of, out of.*
Pro, *For.*
Præ, *Before.*
Palam, *With the Knowledge of.*
Sine, *Without.*
Tenus, *Up to.*

III. Hæ quatuor interdum Accufativum, interdum Ablativum regunt.

In, *In, into.*
Sub, *Under.*

III. *Thefe four govern fometimes the Accufative, and fometimes the Ablative.*

Super, *Above.*
Subter, *Beneath.*

A PREPOSITION is an indeclinable Word, ſhewing the Relation of the Subſtantive Noun to another.

NOTE, That *Pone* and *Secus* rarely occur; and *Prope*, nigh; *Ufque*, unto; *Circiter*, about; *Verfus*, towards; which are commonly reckoned among the *Prepofitions* governing the *Accufative*; and *Procul*, far, among thoſe governing the Ablative, are *Adverbs*; and do not govern a Caſe of themſelves, but by the Prepoſition *ad*, which is underſtood to the firſt four, and *a* or *ab* to the laſt. To which perhaps may be added *Clam*, which is joined very frequently with the Accufative; as, *Clam patre*, or *patrem*; *a* being underſtood to the one, and *quod ad* to the other.

Beſides the ſeparate Uſe of theſe PREPOSITIONS, there is another Uſe ariſes from them, namely, their being put before a vaſt Number of Nouns and Verbs in *Compofition*, which creates a great Variety, and gives a peculiar Elegance and Beauty to the *Latin* Tongue.

There

There are five or six *Syllables, viz.* AM, DI or DIS, RE, SE, CON which are commonly called *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in *compound* Words: However they generally add something the Signification of the Words with which they are compounded; thu

Am,		*round about,*		ambio,	*to surround.*
Di,		*asunder,*		divello,	*to pull asunder.*
Dis,	signifies	*again,*	as,	distraho,	*to draw asunder.*
Re,		*aside or apart,*		relego,	*to read again.*
Se,		*together,*		sepono,	*to lay aside.*
Con,				concresco,	*to grow together*

CHAP. VII.
Of Interjection.

AN INTERJECTION is an indeclinable Word thrown into Discourse, to signify some Passion or Emotion of the Mind.

Some of them express,
1. JOY; as, Evax, *hei, brave, io.*
2. GRIEF; as, Ah, hei, heu, eheu, *ah, alas, woes me.*
3. WONDER; as, Papæ, *O strange;* Vah, *hah.*
4. PRAISE; as, Euge, *well done.*
5. AVERSION; as, Apage, *away, be gone, fy, tush.*
6. EXCLAIMING; as, Oh, proh! *O.*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, Atat, *ha, aha.*
8. IMPRECATION; as, Væ, *wo, pox on't.*
9. LAUGHTER; as, Ha, ha, he.
10. SILENCING; as, Au, 'st, pax, *silence, hush, 'st.*
11. CALLING; as, Eho, io, ho, *so ho, ho, O.*
12. DERISION; as, Hui, *away with.*
13. ATTENTION; as, Hem, *hah.*

NOTE, 1. That the same *Interjection* denotes sometimes one Passion and sometimes another; as, *Vah,* which is used to express *Joy,* and Sorrow, and *Wonder,* &c.

NOTE, 2. That some of them are *natural Sounds,* common to all Languages.

NOTE, 3. That *Nouns* are used sometimes for *Interjections;* as, *Malum!* With a Pox! With a Mischief! *Infandum!* O Shame! fy, fy! *Miserum!* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the Villany!

INTERJECTION is a compendious Way of expressing a whole Sentence in one Word; and used only to represent the Passions and Emotions of the Soul, that the Shortness of the one might the sooner express the Suddenness and Quickness of the other.

CHAP. VIII.
Of Conjunction.

A CONJUNCTION is an indeclinable Word that joins Sentences together, and thereby shews their Dependence upon one another.

Of thefe fome are called,

COPULATIVE; *as*, Et, ac, atque, que, *and*; etiam, quoque, item, *alfo*; cum, tum, *both, and.* Alfo their *Contraries*, Nec, neque, neu, neve, *neither, nor.*

DISJUNCTIVE; *as*, Aut, ve, vel, feu, five, *either, or.*

CONCESSIVE; *as*, Etfi, etiamfi, tametfi, licet, quanquam, quamvis, *tho', altho', albeit.*

ADVERSATIVE; *as*, Sed, verum, autem, at, aft, atqui, *but*; tamen, attamen, veruntamen, verumenimvero, *yet, notwithflanding, nevertheleff.*

CAUSAL; *as*, Nam, namque, enim, *for*; quia, quippe, quoniam, *becaufe*; quod, *that, becaufe.*

ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; *as*, Ergo, ideo, igitur, idcirco, itaque, *therefore*; quapropter, quocirca, *wherefore*; proinde, *therefore*; cum, quum, *feeing, fince*; quandoquidem, *forafmuchas.*

FINAL or PERFECTIVE; *as*, Ut, uti, *that, to the end that.*

CONDITIONAL; *as*, Si, fin, *if*; dum, modo, dummodo, *provided, upon Condition that*; fiquidem, *if indeed.*

EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; *as*, Ni, nifi, *unlefs, except.*

DIMINUTIVE; *as*, Saltem, certè, *at leaft.*

SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; *as*, An, anne, num, *whether*; ne, annon, *whether, not*; necne, *or not.*

EXPLETIVE; *as*, Autem, vero, *now, truly*; quidem, equidem, *indeed.*

ORDINATIVE, *as*, Deinde, *thereafter*; denique, *finally*; infuper, *moreover*; cæterum, *moreover, but, however.*

DECLARATIVE; *as*, Videlicet, fcilicet, nempe, nimirum, *&c. to wit, namely.*

NOTE, 1. That the fame Words, as they are taken in different Views, are both *Adverbs* and *Conjunctions*; as, *An, anne, &c.* are *Sufpenfive Conjunctions* and *Interrogative Adverbs.* The fame may be faid of the *Ordinative* and *Declarative Conjunctions*, which under another View may be ranked under *Adverbs* of *Order* and *Explaining.* So likewife *utinam*, which is commonly called an *Adverb of Wifhing*, when more narrowly confidered, is nothing elfe but the Conjunction *Uti* [that] with the Syllable *nam* added to it, and *opto* [I wifh] underftood; as, *Utinam adfuiffes*; *Ut te Deus male perdat*; fupple *Opto.* But fince both of them are indeclinable, there is no great Need of being very nice in diftinguifhing them.

NOTE, 2. That other Parts of Speech compounded together, fupply the Place of *Conjunctions*; as, *poftea*, afterwards; *præterea*, moreover; *propterea*, becaufe, *&c.* Which are made up of the Prepofitions *poft, præter* and *propter*, with *ea* the Pronoun.

NOTE, 3. That fome *Conjunctions*, according to their natural ORDER, ftand firft in a Sentence; as, *Et, aut, nec, fi,* &c. Some, contrary to their natural Order, ftand in the fecond Place, *viz. autem, vero, quoque, quidem, enim:* And fome may indifferently be put either firft or fecond, *viz. Namque, etenim, fiquidem, ergo, igitur, itaque,* &c. Hence arofe the Divifion of them into *Prepofitive, Subjunctive* and *Common.*

E 3 ¶ CHAP.

¶ CHAP. IX.

APPENDIX, containing some Observations concerning the various Divisions and Significations of Words, especially *Noun* and *Verb*.

1. ALL Words whatsoever are either *Simple* or *Compound*. A SIMPLE Word [*Simplex*] is that which was never more than one; as, *Justus, lego*. A COMPOUND [*Compositum*] is that which is made up of two or more Words, or of a Word and some syllabical Adjection; as, *Injustus, perlego, derelinquo, egomet.*

2. All Words whatsoever are either *Primitive* or *Derivative*. A PRIMITIVE Word [*Primitivum*] is that which comes from no other Word; as, *Justus, lego*. A DERIVATIVE [*Derivativum*] is that which comes from another Word; as, *Justitia, lectio.*

I. Besides the more general Divisions of *Nouns* and *Pronouns*, mentioned *p.* 5 and 22. there are other particular Divisions of them taken from their various Significations and Derivations: The most remarkable whereof are these;

I. With respect to *Signification*.

1. A COLLECTIVE [*Collectivum*] is a Substantive Noun which signifies many in the singular Number; as, *Populus*, a People; *exercitus*, an Army.

2. An INTERROGATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Interrogativum*] is that by which we ask a Question; as *Quis?* Who? *Uter?* Which of the two? *Qualis?* Of what kind? *Quantus?* How great? *Quot?* How many? And these, when they are used without a Question, are called INDEFINITES.

3. A RELATIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Relativum*] is an Adjective that has Respect to something spoken before; as, *Qui, ille, ipse,* &c. *Alius, alter, reliquus, cætera, -um, qualis, quantus,* &c.

4. A PARTITIVE Noun or Pronoun [*Partitivum*] is an Adjective which signifies many severally, and as it were one by one; as, *Omnis, nullus, quisque,* &c. or a Part of many; as, *Quidam, aliquis, neuter, nemo,* &c.

5. A NUMERAL Noun [*Numerale*] is an Adjective which signifies Number, (of which there are four principal Kinds:

(1.) CARDINAL, [*Numerus cardinalis*], as, *Unus, duo, tres,* &c.

(2.) ORDINAL [*Ordinalis*]; *Primus, secundus, tertius,* &c.

(3.) DISTRIBUTIVE, [*Distributivus*]; as, *Singuli, bini, terni,* &c.

(4.) MULTIPLICATIVE, [*Multiplicativus*]; as, *Simplex, duplex, triplex,* &c.

II. With respect to *Signification* and *Derivation*.

1. A PATRONYMICK Noun [*Patronymicum*] is a Substantive Noun derived from another Substantive proper, signifying one's Pedigree or Extraction; as, *Priamides*, the Son of *Priamus*; *Priamis*, the Daughter of *Priamus*; *Æetias*, the Daughter of *Æetes*, *Nerine*, the Daughter of *Nereus*. Patronymicks are generally derived from the Name of the *Father*, but the Poets (for others seldom use them) derive them also from the *Grandfather*, or some other remarkable Person of the *Family*; nay sometimes from the *Founder* of a Nation or People, and also from Countries and Cities; as, *Æacides*, the Son, Grandson, Great-grandson, or one of the Posterity of *Æacus*; *Romulidæ*, the *Romans*, from their first King *Romulus*; *Sicelis, Troas*, a Woman

man of *Sicily,* of *Troy,* &c. *Patronymicks* of Men end in *des*; of Women
in *is, as* and *ne.* Thefe in *des* and *ne* are of the *firft,* and thefe in *is* and
s of the *third* Declenfion.

2. An ABSTRACT Noun [*Abftractum*] is a Subftantive derived from
an Adjective expreffing the Quality of that Adjective in general, without
regard to the Thing in which the Quality is; as, *Bonitas,* Goodnefs; *Dul-
cedo,* Sweetnefs; from *bonus,* good; *dulcis,* fweet. With refpect to thefe
Abftracts, the Adjectives from which they come are called CONCRETES,
becaufe, befides the Quality, they alfo confufedly fignify fomething as
the Subject of it, without which they cannot make Senfe.

3. A GENTILE or PATRIAL Noun [*Gentile* or *Patrium*] is an Adje-
ctive derived from a Subftantive proper, fignifying one's Country; as,
Scotus, Macedo, Arpinas, Edimburgenfis, Taodunanus; a Man born in *Scot-
land, Macedonia, Arpinum, Edinburgh, Dundee*; from *Scotia, Macedonia,
Arpinum, Edinburgum, Taodunum.*

4. A POSSESSIVE Noun [*Poffeffivum*] is an Adjective derived from a
Subftantive whether proper or appellative, fignifying Poffeffion or Pro-
perty; as, *Scoticus, Herculeus, Paternus, Herilis, Fœmineus,* of or belong-
ing to *Scotland, Hercules,* a Father, a Mafter, a Woman; from *Scotia,
Hercules, Pater, Herus, Fœmina.*

5. A DIMINUTIVE Noun [*Diminutivum*] is a Subftantive or Adjective
derived from another Subftantive or Adjective refpectively, importing a
Diminution, or leffening of its Signification; as, *Libellus,* a little Book;
Chartula, a little Paper; *Opufculum,* a little Work; from *liber, charta, o-
pus; Parvulus,* very little; *Candidulus,* pretty white, from *parvus, can-
didus.* Thefe for the moft part end in *lus, la,* or *lum,* and are generally
of the fame Gender with their Primitives.

6. A DENOMINATIVE Noun [*Denominativum*] is a Subftantive or
Adjective derived from another Noun; as, *Gratia,* Favour; *Vinea,* a Vine-
yard, *Senator,* a Senator; from *gratus, vinum, fenex; Cœleftis,* heavenly,
Humanus, humane; *Aureus,* golden; from *cœlum, homo, aurum.*

7. A VERBAL Noun [*Verbale*] is a Subftantive or Adjective derived
from a Verb; as, *Amor,* Love; *Doctrina,* Learning; *Lectio,* a Leffon;
Auditus, Hearing; from *Amo, doceo, lego, audio; Amabilis,* lovely; *Ca-
pax,* capable; *Volucer,* fwift; from *Amo, capio, volo.*

8. Laftly, There are fome Nouns derived from *Participles, Adverbs*
and *Prepofitions*; as, *Fictitius,* counterfeit; *Craftinus,* belonging to the
Morrow; *Contrarius,* contrary; from *Fictus, cras, contra.*

NOTE, That the fame Nouns, according to the different Refpects in
which they are confidered, may fometimes be ranked under one, and fome-
times under another of the above mentioned Claffes; as, *Quis* is an *Inter-
rogative, Relative* or *Partitive; Pietas,* an *Abftract* or *Denominative.*

II. *Pronouns* are divided into four Claffes, *viz.*

1. DEMONSTRATIVES, *Ego, tu, fui.*
2. RELATIVES, *Ille, ipfe, ifte, hic, is, quis, qui.*
3. POSSESSIVES, *Meus, tuus, fuus, nofter, vefter.*
4. PATRIALS or GENTILES, *Noftras, veftras, cujas.*

Of them alfo two are INTERROGATIVES, *Quis* and *Cujas.*

III. 1. Verbs with refpect to their *Figure* or *Frame,* are either SIMPLE;
as, *Amo,* I love: Or COMPOUND; as, *Redamo,* I love again.

2. With refpect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either PRIMITIVE as, *Lego,* I read; or DERIVATIVE; as, *Lectito,* I read frequently.

3. With refpect to their *Conjugation,* are either REGULAR; as, *Amo,* or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo, vis,* &c.

4. With refpect to their *Conftituent Parts,* are either COMPLETE as, *Amo:* or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam:* or REDUNDANT; as, *Edo, edis, & es,* &c.

5. With refpect to their *Perfons,* are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo,* or IMPERSONAL; as, *Pænitet.*

6. With refpect to their *Terminations,* they end either in O; as, *Amo,* or in R; as, *Amor:* or in M; as, *Sum.*

7. With refpect to their *Signification,* Verbs are either *Subftantive* or *Adjective.*

(1.) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [*Subftantivum*] is that which fignifies fimply the Affirmation of Being or Exiftence; as, *Sum, fio, exifto,* I am.

(2.) An ADJECTIVE Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as *Amo:* i. e. *Sum amans,* I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active, Paffive* and *Neuter.*

[1.] An ACTIVE Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Perfon or Nominative before it; as, *Amo, loquor, curro.*

[2.] A PASSIVE Verb [*Paffivum*] is that which affirms Paffion of its Perfon or Nominative before it; as, *Amor.*

[3.] A NEUTER Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Paffion of its Nominative; but fimply fignifies the State, Pofture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto, fedeo, maneo, duro, vireo, flaveo, fapio, quiefco,* &c. *To ftand, fit, ftay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wife, to reft.*

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Tranfitive* and *Intranfitive.*

[1.] An *Active* TRANSITIVE Verb [*Tranfitivum*] is that whofe Action paffeth from the Agent to fome other Thing; as, *Amo patrem.*

[2.] An *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verb [*Intranfitivum*] is that whofe Action paffeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *Curro,* I run; *ambulo,* I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Queftion WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational Anfwer can be returned, the Verb is *Tranfitive;* as, *Whom, or what do you teach?* Anfw. *A Boy, the Grammar:* If not, it is *Intranfitive;* as, *What do you run, go, come, live, fleep,* &c. To which no rational Anfwer can be given, unlefs it be by a Word of like Signification, which fometimes indeed thefe Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam,* I live a pleafant Life; *Eo iter longum,* I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the fame Verb is fometimes *Tranfitive,* and fometimes *Intranfitive;* as, *Ver incipit,* the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus,* to begin an Action, *Plaut.*

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intranfitive* Terbs are often Englifhed with the Signs of a Paffive Verb; as, *Caleo,* I am hot; *Palleo,* I am pale; *Jacobus abiit,* James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intranfitive* Verbs want the Paffive Voice, unlefs *impersonally* ufed, as the *Intranfitive* Verbs moft frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur, itur, ventum eft.*

Tho' all Verbs whatfoever, with refpect to their Signification, belong to fome one or other of the foregoing Claffes, yet becaufe Grammarians together

ther with the *Signification* of Verbs, are obliged also to confider their *Termi-nation*, and finding that all *Active* Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all *Paf-fives* in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two or three other *Claffes* or *Kinds* of them, *viz. Deponent, Common* and *Neuter paffive*.

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Paffive Ter-mination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Loquor*, I fpeak; *morior*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Paffive Ter-mination has a Signification either Active or Paffive; as, *Criminor*, I ac-cufe, *or* I am accufed; *Dignor*, I think, *or* I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER PASSIVE [*Neutro-paffivum*] is that which is half A-ctive and half Paffive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Paffive; as, *Fio, factus fum*, to be made; or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo, aufus fum*, to dare; *gaudeo, gavifus fum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of *Derivative* Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which de-ferve to be remarked, *viz. Frequentatives, Inceptives* and *Defideratives*.

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba frequentativa*] fignify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the laft Supine, by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the firft, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the firft; as, *Clamito*, to cry frequent-ly, from *clamo; dormito*, to fleep often, from *dormio*. From them alfo are formed other Frequentatives; as, *Curro, curfo, curfito; jacio, jacto, jactito; pello, pulfo, pulfito* and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [*Verba inceptiva*] fignify that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the fecond Perfon fing. Pref. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Calco, cales, calefco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba defiderativa*] fignify a Defire of Action. They are formed from the laft Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Cænaturio*, I defire to fup; *Efurio*, I am hungry, *or* I defire to eat.

9. Laftly, In *Conftruction*, Verbs receive Names from their more par-ticular Significations; as, *Vocative* Verbs, or Verbs of *Naming*, Verbs of *remembring*, of *want*, of *teaching*, of *accufing*, &c.

In the preceeding *Division of Verbs, with refpect to their Signification, I have receded a little from the common Method; and in particular I have gi-ven a different Account of Neuter Verbs from that commonly received by Gram-marians, who comprife under them all Intranfitive Verbs, tho' their Signifi-cations be never fo much Active. But this I did partly from the Reafon of the Name, which imports a Negation both of Action and Paffion, and part-ly to give a diftinct View of the Significations of Verbs, without regard to their Terminations, which in that Refpect are purely accidental and arbitrary.*

I *have alfo excluded from the Divifions of Verbs thofe called* NEUTRAL PASSIVES [*Lat.* Neutra paffiva] *becaufe originally they are* Active *Verbs; for the primary Signification of vapulo, is pereo or ploro; of exulo, extra folum eo; of veneo, venum eo; of nubo, velo. Liceo indeed is a very fingular Verb, for in the* Active *Voice it fignifies paffively, and in the* Paffive *actively.*

PARS

2. With respect to their *Species* or *Origin*, are either PRIMITIVE; as, *Lego*, I read; or DERIVATIVE; as, *Lectito*, I read frequently.

3. With respect to their *Conjugation*, are either REGULAR; as, *Amo*: or IRREGULAR; as, *Volo, vis*, &c.

4. With respect to their *Constituent Parts*, are either COMPLETE; as, *Amo*: or DEFECTIVE; as, *Inquam*: or REDUNDANT; as, *Edis, & es*, &c.

5. With respect to their *Persons*, are either PERSONAL; as, *Amo*: or IMPERSONAL; as, *Pœnitet*.

6. With respect to their *Terminations*, they end either in O; as, *Amo*: or in R; as, *Amor*: or in M; as, *Sum*.

7. With respect to their *Signification*, Verbs are either *Substantive* or *Adjective*.

(1.) A SUBSTANTIVE Verb [*Substantivum*] is that which signifies simply the Affirmation of Being or Existence; as, *Sum, fio, existo*, I am.

(2.) An ADJECTIVE Verb [*Adjectivum*] is that which, together with the Signification of Being, has a particular Signification of its own; as *Amo*: i. e. *Sum amans*, I am loving.

An *Adjective* Verb is divided into *Active, Passive* and *Neuter*.

[1.] An ACTIVE Verb [*Activum*] is that which affirms Action of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amo, loquor, curro*.

[2.] A PASSIVE Verb [*Passivum*] is that which affirms Passion of its Person or Nominative before it; as, *Amor*.

[3.] A NEUTER Verb [*Neutrum*] is that which affirms neither Action nor Passion of its Nominative; but simply signifies the State, Posture, or Quality of Things; as, *Sto, sedeo, maneo, duro, vireo, flaveo, sapio, quiesco*, &c. To stand, sit, stay, endure, to be green, to be yellow, to be wise, to rest.

An *Active* Verb is again divided into *Transitive* and *Intransitive*.

[1.] An *Active* TRANSITIVE Verb [*Transitivum*] is that whose Action passeth from the Agent to some other Thing; as, *Amo patrem*.

[2.] An *Active* INTRANSITIVE Verb [*Intransitivum*] is that whose Action passeth not from the Agent to any other; as, *Curro*, I run; *ambulo*, I walk.

When to any Verb you put the Question WHOM? or WHAT? if a rational Answer can be returned, the Verb is *Transitive*; as, *Whom, or what do you teach*? Answ. *A Boy, the Grammar*: If not, it is *Intransitive*; as, *What do you run, go, come, live, sleep*, &c. To which no rational Answer can be given, unless it be by a Word of like Signification, which sometimes indeed these Verbs have after them; as, *Vivo vitam jucundam*, I live a pleasant Life; *Eo iter longum*, I go a long Journey.

NOTE, 1. That the same Verb is sometimes *Transitive*, and sometimes *Intransitive*; as, *Ver incipit*, the Spring begins, *Cic. Incipere facinus*, to begin an Action, *Plaut.*

NOTE, 2. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs are often Englished with the Signs of a Passive Verb; as, *Caleo*, I am hot; *Palleo*, I am pale; *Jacobus abiit*, James is gone.

NOTE, 3. That *Neuter* and *Intransitive* Verbs want the Passive Voice, unless *impersonally* used, as the *Intransitive* Verbs most frequently and elegantly are; as, *pugnatur, itur, ventum est*.

Tho' all Verbs whatsoever, with respect to their Signification, belong to some one or other of the foregoing Classes, yet because Grammarians together

ther with the *Signification* of Verbs, are obliged also to confider their *Termination*, and finding that all *Active* Verbs did not end in *o*, neither all *Paffives* in *or*, it was judged convenient to add to the former two or three other *Claffes* or *Kinds* of them, *viz. Deponent, Common* and *Neuter paffive.*

[1.] A DEPONENT Verb [*Deponens*] is that which has a Paffive Termination, but an Active or Neuter Signification; as, *Loquor*, I fpeak; *morior*, I die.

[2.] A COMMON Verb [*Commune*] is that which under a Paffive Termination has a Signification either Active or Paffive; as, *Criminor*, I accufe, *or* I am accufed; *Dignor*, I think, *or* I am thought worthy.

[3.] A NEUTER PASSIVE [*Neutro-paffivum*] is that which is half Active and half Paffive in its Termination, but in its Signification is either wholly Paffive; as, *Fio*, *factus fum*, to be made; or wholly Active or Neuter; as, *Audeo*, *aufus fum*, to dare; *gaudeo*, *gavifus fum*, to rejoice.

8. To omit the other Kinds of *Derivative* Verbs, which are not very material, there are three Kinds of them derived from Verbs, which deferve to be remarked, *viz. Frequentatives, Inceptives* and *Defiderativives.*

[1.] FREQUENTATIVES [*Verba frequentativa*] fignify Frequency of Action. They are formed from the laft Supine, by changing *atu* into *ito* from Verbs of the firft, and *u* into *o* from Verbs of the other three Conjugations. They are all of the firft; as, *Clamito*, to cry frequently, from *clamo*; *dormito*, to fleep often, from *dormio*. From them alfo are formed other Frequentatives; as, *Curro*, *curfo*, *curfito*; *jacio*, *jacto*, *jactito*; *pello*, *pulfo*, *pulfito* and *pulto*.

[2.] INCEPTIVES [*Verba inceptiva*] fignify that a Thing is begun and tending to Perfection. They are formed from the fecond Perfon fing. Pref. Ind. by adding *co*. They are all of the third Conjugation, and want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Caleo*, *cales*, *calefco*, I grow or wax warm.

[3.] DESIDERATIVES [*Verba defiderativa*] fignify a Defire of Action. They are formed from the laft Supine by adding *rio*. They are all of the Fourth Conjugation, and generally want both Preterite and Supine; as, *Cænaturio*, I defire to fup; *Efurio*, I am hungry, *or* I defire to eat.

9. Laftly, In *Conftruction*, Verbs receive Names from their more particular Significations; as, *Vocative* Verbs, or Verbs of *Naming*, Verbs of *remembring*, of *want*, of *teaching*, of *accufing*, &c.

In the preceeding Division *of* Verbs, *with refpect to their* Signification, *I have receded a little from the common* Method; *and in particular I have given a different Account of* Neuter *Verbs from that commonly received by* Grammarians, *who comprife under them all* Intranfitive *Verbs, tho' their* Significations *be never fo much* Active. *But this I did partly from the Reafon of the* Name, *which imports a* Negation *both of* Action *and* Paffion, *and partly to give a diftinct View of the* Significations *of* Verbs, *without regard to their* Terminations, *which in that Refpect are purely* accidental *and* arbitrary.

I *have alfo excluded from the* Divifions *of* Verbs *thofe called* NEUTRAL PASSIVES [*Lat.* Neutra paffiva] *becaufe originally they are* Active *Verbs; for the primary* Signification *of* vapulo, *is* pereo *or* ploro; *of* exulo, extra *folum* eo; *of* veneo, venum *eo*; *of* nubo, velo. Liceo *indeed is a very fingular Verb, for in the* Active *Voice it fignifies* paffively, *and in the* Paffive *actively.*

PARS

PARS TERTIA.
De Sententiis, sive Oratione.

SENTENTIA est quævis animi cogitatio, duabus aut pluribus vocibus simul junctis enunciata ; ut, *Tu legis* ; *Tu legis libros* ; *Tu legis libros bonos* ; *Tu legis libros bonos domi (a).*

PART THIRD.
Of 𝔖entences, or 𝔖peech.

A SENTENCE is any *Thought of the Mind exprest by two or more Words put together* ; *as,* You read ; You read Books ; You read good Books ; You read good Books at home.

CAP. I.
De Syntaxi, sive Constructione.

SYNTAXIS est recta vocum in Oratione Compositio.

Ejus partes sunt duæ, *Concordantia & Regimen (b).*

CHAP. I.
Of 𝔖yntax, or Con𝔰truction.

SYNTAX is the right ordering of Words in Speech.

Its Parts are two, Concord and Government.

Concor-

(a) We are now arrived at the principal Part of *Grammar* ; for the great End of Speech being to convey our Thoughts unto others, it will be of little Use to us to have a Stock of Words, and to know what Changes can be made upon them, unless we can also apply them to Practice, and make them answer the great Purposes for which they are intended. To the Attainment of this End there are two Things absolutely necessary, *viz.* I. That in Speech we dispose and frame our Words according to the Laws and Rules established among those whose Language we speak. II. That in like manner we know what is spoken or written, and be able to explain it in due Order, and resolve it into the several Parts of which it is made up. The first of these is called SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION, and the second is named EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION. The first shews us how to speak the Language ourselves ; and the second how to understand it when spoken by others. But it must be owned, that there is such a necessary Connexion between them, that he that is Master of the first cannot be ignorant of the second.

(b) NOTE I. That the Difference between *Concord* and *Government* consists chiefly in this, that in Concord there can no Change be made in the *Accidents*, that is, *Gender, Case, Number* or *Person* of the one, but the like Change must also be made in the other : But in *Government*, the first Word (if declinable) may be changed, without any Change in the second. In *Concord*, the first Word may be called the *Word directing*, and the second the
Word

Concordantia eſt quando una dictio concordat cum altera in quibuſdam accidentibus.

Concord *is when one Word agrees with another in ſome Accidents.*

Regimen eſt quando dictio regit certum caſum.

Government *is when a Word governs a certain Caſe.*

I. *De Concordantia.*

Concordantia eſt quadruplex.

1. *Adjectivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*

2. *Verbi* cum *Nominativo.*

3. *Relativi* cum *Antecedente.*

4. *Subſtantivi* cum *Subſtantivo.*

REGULA I.

Adjectivum concordat cum Subſtantivo in genere, numero & caſu; ut,

[a] *Vir* [b] *bonus.*

[a] *Fœmina* [b] *caſta.*

[b] *Dulce* [a] *pomum.*

I. Of **Concord.**

Concord is fourfold.

1. *Of an* Adjective *with a* Subſtantive.

2. *Of a* Verb *with a* Nominative.

3. *Of a* Relative *with an* Antecedent.

4. *Of a* Subſtantive *with a* Subſtantive.

RULE I.

An *Adjective agrees with* a *Subſtantive in Gender, Number and Caſe; as,*

A good Man.

A chaſte Woman.

A ſweet Apple.

REG.

Word directed: In *Government* the firſt is called the *Word governing,* and the ſecond the *Word governed.*

NOTE, 2. That for the greater Eaſe both of Maſter and Scholar, we have noted theſe Words wherein the Force of each Example lieth, with the Letters [a] and [b]; the Word *directing* or *governing* with [a], and the Word *directed* or *governed* with [b]; or where there are two Words *directing* or *governing,* the firſt with [a], and the ſecond with [aa]; and where two Words *directed* or *governed,* the firſt with [b], and the ſecond with [bb].

Number 1. NOTE 1. That the Way to find out the *Subſtantive* is to ask the Queſtion WHO, or WHAT? to the *Adjective;* for that which anſwers to it is the *Subſtantive.* And the ſame Queſtion put to the *Verb* or *Relative* diſcovers the *Nominative* or *Antecedent.*

NOTE, 2. That another *Adjective* ſometimes ſupplies the Place of a *Subſtantive;* as, *Amicus certus,* a ſure Friend; *Bona ferina,* Good Veniſon. *Homo* being underſtood to *Amicus,* and *Caro* to *Ferina.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Subſtantive* THING [*Negotium*] is moſt frequently underſtood; and then the *Adjective* is always put in the *Neuter* Gender, as if it were a *Subſtantive;* as, *Triſte,* [ſupple *Negotium*] i. e. *Res triſtis,* A ſad Thing. *Bona,* [ſupple *Negotia*] i. e. *Res bona,* Good Things.

REG. II.	RULE II.
2 VERBUM concordat cum Nominativo ante se in numero & persona ; ut,	A VERB agrees with the No- minative before it in Number and Person; as,
ᵃ *Ego* ᵇ *lego.*	I read.
ᵃ *Tu* ᵇ *scribis.*	You write.
ᵃ *Præceptor* ᵇ *docet.*	The Master teacheth.

ANNOTATIONES.

3 1. VERBA Substantiva, Vocandi & Gestûs habent u- trinque Nominativum ad ean- dem rem pertinentem ; ut,	1. *Substantive Verbs, Verbs of Naming and Gesture have a Nominative both before and after them, belonging to the same Thing ; as,*
ᵇ *Ego* ᵃ *sum* ᵇᵇ *discipulus.*	I am a Scholar.
ᵇ *Tu* ᵃ *vocaris* ᵇᵇ *Joannes.*	You are named *John.*
ᵇ *Illa incedit* ᵇᵇ *Regina.*	She walks [as] a Queen.
4 2. ¶ EXCEP. Infinitivus Modus Accusativum ante se habet ; ut,	2. ¶ EXCEP. *The Infinitive Mood has an Accusative before it ; as,*
Gaudeo ᵇ *te* ᵃ *valere.*	I am glad that you are well.
	3. ¶ ESSE

Num. 2. NOTE, That the *Infinitive* Mood frequently supplies the Place of the *Nominative*; as, *Mentiri non est meum*, To lie is not mine, [or my Property.]

Num. 3. 1. *Substantive* Verbs are *Sum, fio, forem* and *existo.*

2. Verbs of *Naming* are these Passives, *Appellor, dicor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*; to which add, *Videor, existimor, creor, constituor, salutor, desig- nor,* &c.

3. Verbs of *Gesture* are, *Eo, incedo, venio, cubo, sto, sedeo, evado, fugio, dormio, somnio, maneo,* &c.

NOTE, That any *Verb* may have after it the *Nominative*, when it be- longs to the same Thing with the *Nominative* before it ; as, *Audivi hoc puer*, I heard it being, [or when I was] a Boy. *Defendi rempublicam ado- lescens, non deseram senex*, I defended the Commonwealth [when I was] a young Man, I will not desert it [now that I am] old, *Cic.*

Num. 4. NOTE, That when the Particle THAT [in *Lat.* QUOD, or UT] comes between two *Verbs*, it is elegantly left out, by turning the *Nominative* Case into the *Accusative*, and the Verb into the *Infinitive* Mood; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say [that] the King is coming; rather than, *Aiunt quod rex adventat. Turpe est eos qui bene nati sunt tur- piter vivere*, 'Tis a shameful Thing that they who are well born should live basely ; rather than, *Ut ii turpiter vivant.*

3. ¶ *ESSE* habet eundem caſum poſt ſe quem ante ſe ; ut,

b *Petrus cupit* a *eſſe* bb *vir doctus.*

Scio b *Petrum* a *eſſe* bb *virum doctum.*

b *Mihi* bb *negligenti* a *eſſe non licet.*

REG. III.

RELATIVUM *Qui, quæ, quod*, concordat cum Antecedente in genere & numero ; ut,

a *Vir ſapit* b *qui pauca loquitur.*

1. Si nullus interveniat Nominativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit verbo Nominativus ; ut,

---

3. ¶ ESSE *hath the ſame* Caſe *after it that it hath before it* ; as,

Peter deſires to be a learned Man.

I know that Peter is a learned Man.

I am not allowed to be negligent.

RULE III.

THE *Relative*, Qui, quæ, quod, *agrees with the* Antecedent *in Gender and Number* ; as,

He is a wiſe Man who ſpeaks little.

1. *If no Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative ſhall be the Nominative to the Verb :* as,

Pra-

Num. 5. NOTE, 1. That we frequently ſay, *Licet nobis eſſe bonos* ; We may be good. *Tibi expedit eſſe ſedulum*, 'Tis expedient for you to be diligent. *Nemini unquam nocuit fuiſſe pium*, It never hurted any Man that he hath been pious : But then the Accuſative, *Nos, te, illum*, &c. is underſtood ; thus, *Licet nobis* [*nos*] *eſſe bonos*, &c.

NOTE, 2. That if *Eſſe*, and the other *Infinitives* of *Subſtantive* Verbs, Verbs of *Naming*, &c. have no *Accuſative* or *Dative* before them, the Word that follows (whether *Subſtantive* or *Adjective*) is to be put in the *Nominative*, as, *Dicitur eſſe vir*, He is ſaid to be a Man. *Non videtur eſſe facturus*, He ſeems not about to do it. *Nemo debet dici beatus ante ſuum obitum*, No Man ſhould be called happy before his Death.

Num. 6. NOTE, 1. That the *Antecedent* is a *Subſtantive* Noun that goes before the *Relative*, and is again underſtood to the Relative. Wherefore it will not be amiſs to teach the Scholar to ſupply it every where ; thus, *Beware of Idleneſs, which* [Idleneſs] *is an Enemy to Virtue*, Cave ſegnitiem, quæ [ſegnities] eſt inimica virtuti. Nay *Cicero* himſelf, but eſpecially *Cæſar*, frequently repeat the *Subſtantive* ; as, *In oppidum perfugiſti, quo in oppido*, &c. You fled to a Town, in which Town, *Cic. Diem dicunt, quo die ad ripam Rhodani conveniant*, They appoint a Day, on which Day they ſhould meet upon the Bank of the River *Rhoſne, Caſ.*

NOTE, 2. That when the *Relative* reſpects a *whole Sentence*, it is put in the Neuter Gender ; as, *Joannes mortuus eſt, quod mihi ſummo dolori eſt*, John is dead, which is a great Grief to me.

NOTE, 3. That the *Perſon* of the *Relative* is always the ſame with that of its *Antecedent* ; as, *Ego qui doceo*, I who teach. *Tu qui diſcis*, You who learn. *Lectio quæ docetur*, The Leſſon which is taught.

Præceptor ª *qui* ᵇ *docet.*	The Mafter who teacheth.
8 2. At fi interveniat Nomi-nativus inter Relativum & Verbum, Relativum erit ejus casûs quem Verbum aut Nomen fequens, vel Præpofitio præcedens regere folent ; ut,	2. *But if a Nominative comes between the Relative and the Verb, the Relative fhall be of that Cafe, which the Verb or Noun following, or the Prepofition going before ufe to govern ; as,*
Deus ᵇ *quem* ª *colimus.*	God whom we worſhip.
ᵇ *Cujus munere vivimus.*	By whofe Gift we live.
ᵇ *Cui nullus eſt* ª *fimilis.*	To whom there is none like.
ª *A* ᵇ *quo facta funt omnia.*	By whom all Things were made.

ANNOTATIO.

9 ¶ Duo vel plura Subftantiva fingularia Conjunctione [*&, ac, atque,* &c.] copulata, habent Adjectivum, Verbum vel Relativum plurale ; ut,	*Two or more Subftantives fingular coupled together with a Conjunction,* [&, ac, atque, &c.] *have a Verb, Adjective, or Relative plural ; as,*
ª *Petrus & * ªª *Joannes* ᵇ *qui* ᵇ *funt* ᵇ *docti.*	Peter and John who are learned.

REG.

Num. 9. NOTE, 1. That when the *Subftantives* are of different *Genders,* the *Adjective* or *Relative plural* muft agree with the *Mafculine* rather than the *Feminine* or *Neuter*; as, *Pater & mater qui funt mortui,* The Father and Mother who are dead.

EXCEP. But if the *Subftantives* fignify Things *without Life,* the *Adjective,* or *Relative plural,* muft be put in the *Neuter* Gender; as, *Divitiæ, decus, gloria in oculis fita funt,* Riches, Honour and Glory are fet before your Eyes.

NOTE, 2. That when two or more *Nominatives* are of different *Perfons,* the *Verb plural* muft agree with the *Firſt Perfon* rather than the *Second*; and the *Second* rather than the *Third,* as, *Si tu & Tullia valetis, ego & Cicero valemus,* If you and *Tullia* are well, I and *Cicero* are well.

NOTE, 3. That the *Adjective* or *Verb* frequently agree with the *Subftantive* or *Nominative* that is neareft them, and are underftood to the reft ; as, *Et ego in culpa fum & tu,* Both I and you are in the Fault : Or, *Et ego & tu es in culpa. Nihil hic deeſt nifi carmina,* There is nothing here wanting but Charms ; or, *Nihil hic nifi carmina defunt.* This Manner of Conftruction is moſt ufual, when the different Words fignify one and the fame Thing, or much to the fame Purpofe; as, *Mens, ratio & confilium in fenibus eſt,* Underftanding, Reafon and Prudence is in old Men.

NOTE, 4. That *Collective* Nouns, becaufe they are equivalent to a *Plural* Number, have fometimes the *Adjective* or *Verb* in the Plural Number; as, *Pars virgis cæfi,* a Part of them were fcourged, *Turba ruunt,* The Crowd ruſh.

REG. IV.

UNUM Substantivum concordat cum alio eandem rem significante in casu; ut,

ᵃ *Cicero* ᵇ *orator.*
ᵃ *Urbs* ᵇ *Edimburgum.*
ᵃ *Filius* ᵇ *delicia matris sua* (*a*).

RULE IV.

ONE *Substantive agrees* 10 *with another signifying the same Thing in Case; as,*
Cicero the Orator.
The City *Edinburgh.*
A Son the Darling of his Mother.

II. *De Regimine.*

REGIMEN est triplex.

1. *Nominum.*
2. *Verborum.*
3. *Vocum indeclinabilium.*

Of Government.

GOVERNMENT is three-fold.

1. Of Nouns.
2. Of Verbs.
3. Of Words indeclinable.

I. REGIMEN *Nominum.*
§ 1. *Substantivorum.*

UNUM Substantivum regit aliud rem diversam significans in Genitivo; ut,

ᵃ *Amor* ᵇ *Dei.*
ᵃ *Lex* ᵇ *natura.*

I. *The* Government *of Nouns.*
§ 1. Of Substantives.

ONE *Substantive* go-11 verns another *signifying a different Thing in the Genitive; as,*
The Love of God.
The Law of Nature.

ANNOTATIONES.

* 1. Si posterius Substantivum adjunctum habeat Adje-

1. *If the last Substantive* 12 *have an Adjective of* Praise ctivum

---

(*a*) To these four *Concords* some add a *fifth, viz.* That of the *Responsive,* agreeing with its *Interrogative* in Case; as, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater.* Who gave you Money? My Father. *Quo cares? Libro.* What do you want? A Book. But this ought not to be made a principal Rule For the *Responsive,* or the Word that answers the Question, does not depend upon the *Interrogative,* but upon the Verb, or some other Word joined with it, which, because spoken immediately before, is generally understood in the Answer; thus, *Quis dedit tibi pecuniam? Pater* [dedit mihi pecuniam.] *Quo cares?* [Careo] *libro.*

Num. 11. NOTE, 1. That OF or 's is the ordinary *Sign* of this *Genitive.*

NOTE 2. That the Relative Pronouns, *ejus, illius, cujus,* &c. Englished *His, her, its, their, thereof, whereof, whose,* have their *Substantives* generally understood; as, *Liber ejus,* [supple *Hominis, Femina,* &c.] His Book or her Book, *Libri eorum,* [supple *hominum, faminarum,* &c.] Their Books.

ctivum laudis vel vituperii, in Genitivo vel Ablativo poni potest; ut,

ᵃ *Vir* ᵇ *summa* ᵇ *prudentia*, vel ᵇ *summâ* ᵇ *prudentiâ*.

ᵃ *Puer* ᵇ *proba* ᵇ *indolis*, vel ᵇ *probâ* ᵇ *indole*.

13 ⁺ 2. Adjectivum in neutro genere absque Substantivo regit Genitivum; ut,

ᵃ *Multum* ᵇ *pecunia*.

ᵃ *Quid* ᵇ *rei?*

or *Dispraise joined with it, it may be put in the Genitive or Ablative; as,*

A Man of great Wisdom.

A Boy of a good Disposition.

2. *An Adjective in the Neuter Gender without a Substantive governs the Genitive; as,*

Much Money.

What is the Matter?

---

§ 2. *Adjectivorum.*

§ 2. Of Adjectives.

R E G. I.

14 * ADJECTIVA verbalia vel affectionem animi significantia Genitivum postulant; ut,

ᵃ *Avidus* gloriæ.

ᵃ *Ignarus* ᵇ *fraudis.*

ᵃ *Memor* ᵇ *beneficiorum.*

R U L E I.

VERBAL *Adjectives, or such as signify an Affection of the Mind require the Genitive; as,*

Desirous of Glory.

Ignorant of Fraud.

Mindful of Favours.

R E G.

Num. 13. This is more elegant than *Multa pecunia; Quæ res?*

NOTE, 1. That these *Adjectives* which thus govern the *Genitive*, as if they were *Substantives*, are generally such as signify *Quantity*; as, *Multum, tantum, quantum, plus, plurimum.*

NOTE, 2. That *Plus* and *Quid* always govern the *Genitive*, and upon that Account are by many thought real *Substantives.*

Num. 14. To this Rule belong,

1. *Adjectives* of DESIRE; as, *Cupidus, ambitiosus, avarus, studiosus, curiosus.*

2. Of KNOWLEDGE; as, *Peritus, gnarus, prudens, callidus, providus, doctus, docilis, præscius, præsagus, certus, memor, eruditus, expertus, consultus,* &c.

3. Of IGNORANCE; as, *Ignarus, rudis, imperitus, nescius, inscius, incertus, dubius, anxius, sollicitus, immemor.*

4. Of GUILT; as, *Conscius, convictus, manifestus, suspectus, reus.*

5. *Verbals* in AX and NS; as, *Edax, capax, ferax, fugax, tenax, pervicax;* And *Amans, cupiens, appetens, patiens, fugiens, sitiens, negligens,* &c.

6. To which may be referred, *Æmulus, munificus, parcus, prodigus, profusus, securus.*

REG. II.

PARTITIVA & parti-tivè posita, Comparati-va, Superlativa, Interrogativa & quædam Numeralia Geniti-vo plurali gaudent ; ut,

ᵃ *Aliquis* ᵇ *Philosophorum.*
ᵃ *Senior* ᵇ *fratrum.*
ᵃ *Doctissimus* ᵇ *Romanorum.*

ᵃ *Quis* ᵇ *nostrum.*
ᵃ *Una* ᵇ *Musarum.*
ᵃ *Octavus* ᵇ *sapientum.*

REG. III.

ADJECTIVA significantia commodum vel incommo-dum, similitudinem vel dissimi-litudinem, regunt Dativum ; ut,
ᵃ *Utilis* ᵇ *bello.*
ᵃ *Perniciosus* ᵇ *reipublicæ.*
ᵃ *Similis* ᵇ *patri.*

RULE II.

PARTITIVES and Words 15 placed partitively, Com-paratives, Superlatives, Inter-rogatives and some Numerals govern the Genitive plural ; as,

Some one of the Philosophers.
The elder of the Brothers.
The most learned of the Ro-mans.
Which of us ?
One of the Muses.
The eighth of the wise Men.

RULE III.

ADJECTIVES signifying 16 Profit or Disprofit, Like-ness or Unlikeness, govern the Dative ; as,
Profitable for War.
Pernicious to the Common-
Like his Father.   (wealth.

F   ¶ Ver-

Num. 15. NOTE, I. That it is easy to know when this Rule takes place, by resolving the *Genitive* into *inter* with the *Accus.* or *de, e, ex,* with the *Abl.* as, *Optimus Regum,* The best of Kings, i. e. *Optimus inter Reges,* or *de, e, ex Regibus.*

NOTE, 2. That when there are two *Substantives* of different *Genders,* the *Partitive,* &c. rather agrees with the first than the last ; as, *Indus amnium maximus,* Cic. *Leo animalium fortissimus,* Plin. Otherwise it is of the same Gender with the *Substantive* it governs ; as, *Pauca animali-um, Unaquæque feminarum.*

NOTE, 3. That *Partitives,* &c. take the *Genitive singular* of *Collective Nouns,* and do not necessarily agree with them in *Gender,* as, *Præstan-tissimus nostræ civitatis,* Cic. *Nympharum sanguinis una,* Virg.

Num. 16. NOTE, I. That some of these *Adjectives* govern also the *Genitive;* as, *Amicus, inimicus, socius, vicinus, par, æqualis, similis, dis-similis, proprius, communis,* &c.

NOTE, 2. That *Adjectives* signifying *Motion* or *Tendency* to a Thing, choose rather the *Accusative* with AD, than the *Dative ;* such as, *Procli-vis, pronus, propensus, velox, celer, tardus, piger,* &c. as,

Est piger ad pœnas Princeps, ad præmia velox, Ovid.

NOTE, 3. That *Adjectives* signifying *Fitness,* or the *contrary,* may have either of them ; as, *Aptus, ineptus bello,* or *ad bellum.*

17 ¶ Verbalia in BILIS & DUS regunt Dativum; ut, ª *Amandus* vel ª *amabilis* ᵇ *omnibus.*

Verbals in BILIS *and* DUS *govern the Dative; as,* To be beloved of all Men.

R E G. IV.

18 ADJECTIVA dimensionem significantia regunt Accusativum mensuræ; ut, *Columna sexaginta* ᵇ *pedes* ª *alta.*

R U L E IV.

ADJECTIVES *signifying Dimension govern the Accusative of Measure; as,* A Pillar sixty Foot high.

R E G. V.

19 COMPARATIVUS regit Ablativum, qui resolvitur per QUAM; ut, ª *Dulcior* ᵇ *melle.* ª *Præstantior* ᵇ *auro.*

R U L E V.

THE Comparative Degree *governs the Ablative, which is resolved by* Quàm; *as,* Sweeter than Honey. Better than Gold.

R E G. VI.

20 DIGNUS, *Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus* & *Fretus:* Item *Natus, Satus, Ortus, Editus,*

R U L E VI.

THESE *Adjectives,* Dignus, Indignus, Contentus, Præditus, Captus *and* Fretus: *Also* Natus, Satus, Or-

---

Num. 17. OF or BY is the ordinary Sign of this *Dative.*

NOTE, That *Participles* of the *Preter Tense,* and *Passive* Verbs also, especially among the Poets, have frequently the *Dative,* instead of the *Ablative* with A or AB; as, *Nullus eorum mihi visus est,* None of them was seen by me; *Non audior ulli,* I am not heard by any.

Num. 18. The *Adjectives* of DIMENSION are, *Altus,* high or deep; *crassus* or *densus,* thick; *latus,* broad; *longus,* long; *profundus,* deep. The Names of MEASURE are *Digitus,* an Inch; *palmus,* an Handbreadth; *pes,* a Foot; *cubitus,* a Cubit; *ulna,* an Ell; *passus,* a Pace, &c.

NOTE, 1. That Verbs signifying *Dimension* likewise have the *Accusative* of *Measure*; as, *Patet tres ulnas,* It is three Ells large, *Virg.*

NOTE, 2. That sometimes the Word of *Measure* is put in the *Ablative*; as, *Fossa sex cubitis alta, duodecim lata,* Liv. *Venter ejus extat sesquipede,* Pers. And sometimes but rarely in the *Genitive*; as, *Nec longior duodenûm pedum,* Plin.

Num. 19. Let the following Examples be observed and imitated: *Multo melior,* Much better. *Nihilo pejor,* Nothing worse. *Major solito,* Greater than usual. *Quo diligentior es, eo doctior evades,* The more diligent you are, the more learned you will become. *Quanto superbior, tanto vilior,* The prouder, the less worth. *Nihil Virgilio doctius,* There is none more learned than *Virgil.*

ſimilia, Ablativum petunt ;

ᵃ *Dignus* ᵇ *honore.*
ᵃ *Præditus* ᵇ *virtute.*
ᵃ *Contentus* ᵇ *parvo.*
ᵃ *Captus* ᵇ *oculis.*
ᵃ *Fretus* ᵇ *viribus.*
ᵃ *Ortus* ᵇ *regibus.*

REG. VII.

ADJECTIVUM copiæ aut inopiæ regit Genitivum vel Ablativum ; ut,
ᵃ *Plenus* ᵇ *iræ* vel ᵇ *ira.*
ᵃ *Inops* ᵇ *rationis.*

II. REGIMEN *Verborum.*

§ 1. *Perſonalium.*

REG. I.

SUM quoties poſſeſſionem, proprietatem aut officium ſignificat, regit Genitivum ; ut,
ᵃ *Eſt* ᵇ *Regis punire rebelles.*

ᵇ *Inſipientis* ᵃ *eſt dicere, non putaram.*

ᵇ *Militum* ᵃ *eſt ſuo duci parere.*

¶ Excipiuntur hi Nominativi, *Meum, tuum, ſuum,*

Ortus, Editus, *and the like, require the Ablative ; as,*
Worthy of Honour.
Endued with Virtue.
Content with little.
Blind.
Truſting to his Strength.
Deſcended of Kings.

RULE VII.

AN *Adjective of Plenty* [21] *or Want governs the Genitive or Ablative ; as,*
Full of Anger.
Void of Reaſon.

II. The Government of Verbs.

§ 1. Of **Perſonal** Verbs.

RULE I.

SUM, *when it ſignifies* [22] *Poſſeſſion, Property or Duty, governs the Genitive ; as,*

It belongs to the King to puniſh Rebels.

It is the Property of a Fool to ſay, I had not thought.

It is the Duty of Soldiers to obey their General.

¶ *Theſe Nominatives,* Me- [23] um, tuum, ſuum, noſtum, ve-

F 2   no-

Num. 21. NOTE, 1. That *Diſtentus, gravidus, refertus* ; and *orbus, vacuus, viduus,* chooſe rather the *Ablative : Indigus, compos* and *impos* the Genitive.

NOTE, 2. That ſome comprehend *Opus* and *Uſus,* when they ſignify *Neceſſity,* under this Rule , as, *Quid opus eſt verbis?* What Need is there of Words? *Ovid. Nunc viribus uſus,* Now there is Need of Strength, *Virg.* But it is to be remarked that theſe are Subſtantive Nouns, the very ſame with *Opus, operis,* a Work, and *Uſus, uſus,* Uſe ; and have the *Ablative* after them, becauſe of the *Prepoſition* IN, which is underſtood. Sometimes *Opus* hath the *Nominative* by Num. 3. as, *Dux nobis opus eſt,* We ſtand in Need of a Leader.   It is elegantly joined with the *Participle Perfect* ; as, *Conſulto, maturato, invento, facto,* &c. *opus eſt,* We muſt adviſe, make haſte, find out, do, &c.

noſtrum, veſtrum ; ut,
b Tuum a eſt id procurare.
REG. II.
24 * MISEREOR, mi-
ſereſco & ſatago
regunt Genitivum ; ut,
a Miſerere b civium tuorum.
a Satagit b rerum ſuarum.
REG. III.
25 EST pro *habeo* regit Da-
tivum perſonæ ; ut,

a Eſt b mihi liber.
a Sunt b mihi libri.
REG. IV.
26 SUM pro *affero* regit du-
os Dativos, unum per-
ſonæ, alterum rei ; ut,

a Eſt mihi b voluptati.
REG. V.
27 VERBUM ſignificans
commodum vel incom-
modum regit Dativum ; ut,
Fortuna a favet b fortibus
b Nemini a noceas.

ſtrum, *are excepted* ; as,
It is your Duty to manage that.
RULE II.
MISEREOR, miſereſco
and ſatago *govern the*
Genitive ; as,
Take pity on your Countrymen.
He hath his Hands full at home.
RULE III.
EST *taken for* habeo [*to
have*] *governs the Dative
of a Perſon* ; as,
I have a Book.
I have Books.
RULE IV.
SUM *taken for* affero [*to
bring*] *governs two Da-
tives, the one of a Perſon, and
the other of a Thing* ; as,
It is [*brings*] a Pleaſure to me.
RULE V.
A Verb ſignifying Advan-
tage or Diſadvantage go-
verns the Dative ; as,
Fortune favours the Brave.
Do Hurt to no Man.

REG.

Num. 23. To theſe laſt may be added *Poſſeſſive* Nouns, ſuch as, *Regi-
um, humanum, belluinum,* and the like ; as, *Humanum eſt errare,* It is in-
cident to Man to err.

NOTE, That to all thoſe are underſtood *Officium, opus, negotium,* or
ſome other Words to be gathered from the Sentence ; as, *Me Pompeii to-
tum eſſe ſcis,* You know that I am wholly Pompey's, or in Pompey's In-
tereſt, *Cic. i. e. amicum, fautorem,* or the like.

Num. 25. This is more elegant than *Habeo librum,* or *habeo libros.*
So *Deſum* is uſed elegantly for *Careo* ; as, *Deſunt mihi libri,* for *Care-
libris,* I want Books.

Num. 26. NOTE, That other *Verbs,* ſuch as, *Do, duco, verto, tribuo, ha-
beo, relinquo,* &c. may have two Datives ; as, *Hoc tibi laudi datur,* You
are praiſed for this. *Ne mihi vitio vertas,* Do not blame me.

To this may be referred ſuch Expreſſions as theſe, *Eſt mihi nomen Jo-
anni,* My Name is John ; which is more elegant than *Eſt mihi nomen Jo-
annes* or *Joannis.*

Num. 27. This is a very general *Rule,* and (when we ſignify a Thing

REG. VI.

VERBUM activè ſignificans regit Accuſativum ; ut,

Am i ^b *Deum.*

^a*Reverere parentes.*

* *Recordor, memini, remini-*ſcor & *obliviſcor* regunt Accuſativum vel Genitivum ; ut,

^a*Recordor lectionis* vel ^b *lectionem.*

^a*Obliviſcor* ^b *injuriæ* vel ^b *injuriam.*

RULE VI.

A VERB ſignifying active-28 ly governs the Accuſative ; as,

Love God.

Reverence your Parents.

Recordor, memini, remini-29 ſcor *and* obliviſcor *govern the Accuſative or Genitive* ; *as,*

I remember my Leſſon.

I forget an Injury.

F 3 VER-

...obe acquired to any Perſon or Thing) almoſt common to all Verbs. But in a more particular Manner are comprehended under it,

1. To PROFIT or HURT ; as, *Commodo, proficio, placeo, conſulo, noceo, officio.* But *Lædo* and *offendo* govern the *Accuſ.*

2. To FAVOUR, to HELP, and their Contraries ; as, *Faveo, annuo, arrideo, aſſentior, adſtipulor, gratulor, ignoſco, indulgeo, parco, adulor, plaudo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, ſtudeo, ſupplico,* &c. Alſo *Auxilior, adminiculor, ſubvenio, ſuccurro, patrocinor, medeor :* Alſo *Derogo, detraho, invideo,* &c. But *Juvo* has the *Accuſ.*

3. To COMMAND, OBEY or RESIST ; as, *Impero, præcipio, mando :* *Pareo, ſervio, obedio, obſequor, obtempero, morem gero, morigeror, famulor :* *Pugno, repugno, certo, obſto, reluctor, renitor, reſiſto, adverſor, refragor,* &c. But *Jubeo* governs the *Accuſ.*

4. To THREATEN or be ANGRY with ; as, *Minor, indignor, iraſcor, ſuccenſeo.*

5. To TRUST ; as, *Fido, confido, credo.*

6. Verbs compounded with SATIS, BENE and MALE ; *Satisfacio, benefacio, benedico, malefacio, maledico.*

7. The Compounds of the Verb SUM ; as, *Adſum, proſum, obſum.*

8. Verbs compounded with theſe ten PREPOSITIONS, *Ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, poſt, præ, ſub* and *ſuper* ; as, 1. *Adſto, accumbo, acquieſco, aſſideo, adhæreo, admoveo.* 2. *Antecello, anteeo, anteverto.* 3. *Conſono, commiſceo, condono, commorior.* 4. *Illudo, immorior, inhæreo, inſideo, inhio, innitor, invigilo, incumbo.* 5. *Interpono, intervenio, interſero.* 6. *Obrepo, obtrecto, occumbo.* 7. *Poſtpono, poſthabeo.* 8. *Præeo, præſtat* for *excellit, præluceo.* 9. *Succedo, ſubmitto, ſubjicio.* 10. *Superſto, ſupervenio.*

NOTE, 1. That TO, the Sign of the *Dative,* is frequently underſtood.

NOTE, 2. To TO is not always a Sign of the *Dative,* for 1. Verbs of Local Motion ; as, *Eo, venio, proficiſcor :* And 2. Theſe Verbs, *Provoco, voco, invito, hortor, ſpecto, pertineo, attineo,* and ſuch like, have the *Accuſative* with the Prepoſition *ad.*

Num. 28. NOTE, That *Neuter* and *Intranſitive Verbs* have ſometimes an *Accuſative* after them. 1. Of their *own* or the *like* Signification ; as, *Vivere vitam, Gaudere gaudium, Sitire ſanguinem, Olere hircum.* 2. When taken in a *Metaphorical* Senſe ; as, *Ardebat Alexin,* i, e, *Vehementer amabat.*

VERBA activa alium unà cum Accusativo casum regentia.

30 * 1. VERBA accusandi, damnandi & absolvendi, cum Accusativo personæ regunt etiam Genitivum criminis; ut,

  ᵃ *Arguit* ᵇ *me* ᵇᵇ *furti.*

  ᵇ *Meipsum* ᵇᵇ *inertia* ᵃ *condemno.*

  ᵇ *Illum* ᵇᵇ *homicidii* ᵃ *absolvunt.*

31 2. Verba comparandi, dandi, narrandi & auferendi, regunt Dativum cum Accusativo; ut,

Active VERBS governing another Case together with the Accusative.

1. *VERBS of Accusing, Condemning and Acquitting, with the Accusative of the Person, govern also the Genitive of the Crime; as,*

He accuses me of Theft.

I condemn myself of Laziness.

They acquit him of Manslaughter.

2. *VERBS of Comparing, Giving, Declaring and Taking away, govern the Dative with the Accusative; as,*

  ᵃ *Com-*

Num, 30. 1. Verbs of ACCUSING are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, arguo, alligo, astringo, defero, incuso, insimulo, postulo,* &c.

2. Verbs of CONDEMNING are, *Damno, condemno, convinco,* &c.

3. Verbs of ABSOLVING are, *Solvo, absolvo, libero, purgo,* &c.

NOTE, 1. That the *Genitive* may be changed into the *Ablative,* either with or without a *Preposition;* as, *Purgo te hac culpa,* or *de hac culpa,* I clear you of this Fault. *Eum de vi condemnavit,* He found him guilty of a Riot, *Cic.*

NOTE, 2. That the *Genitive,* properly speaking, is governed by some *Ablative* understood, such as, *Crimine, pœna, actione, causa;* as, *Accusari furti,* i. e. *Crimine furti. Condemnare capitis,* i. e. *pœna capitis.*

NOTE, 3. That *Crimine, pœna, actione, capite, morte,* scarcely admit of a *Preposition.*

Num. 31. 1. To Verbs of COMPARING belong also Verbs of *preferring* or *postponing.*

2. To Verbs of GIVING belong Verbs of *Receiving, promising, paying, sending, bringing.*

3. To Verbs of DECLARING belong Verbs of *Explaining, shewing, denying,* &c.

4. Verbs of TAKING away are, *Aufero, adimo, eripio, eximo, demo, surripio, detraho, tollo, exuo, extorqueo, arceo, defendo,* &c.

NOTE, 1. That many of these Verbs govern the *Dative* by *Num.* 27.

NOTE, 2. That innumerable other Verbs may have the *Dative* with the *Accusative,* when together with the *Thing done* is also signified the *Person* or *Thing* to, or for whom it is *done;* as, *Doce mihi filium,* Teach me my Son; *Cura mihi hanc rem,* Take Care of this Affair for me.

NOTE, 3. That *Comparo, confero, compono,* have frequently the *Ablative* with *cum.*

ᵃ*Comparo* ᵇ*Virgilium* ᵇᵇ*Homero.*

I compare *Virgil* to *Homer.*

ᵇ*Suum* ᵇᵇ*cuique* ᵃ*tribuito.*

Give every Man his own.

ᵃ*Narras* ᵇ*fabulam* ᵇᵇ*ſurdo.*

You tell a Story to a deaf Man.

ᵃ*Eripuit* ᵇ*me* ᵇᵇ*morti.*

He reſcued me from Death.

* 3. VERBA *rogandi* & *docendi* duos admittunt Accuſativos, priorem perſonæ, poſteriorem rei ; ut,

3. VERBS *of Asking and Teaching admit of two Accuſatives, the firſt of a Perſon, and the ſecond of a Thing ; as,*

ᵃ*oſce* ᵇ*Deum* ᵇᵇ*veniam.*

Beg Pardon of God.

ᵃ*Docuit* ᵇ*me* ᵇᵇ*Grammaticam.*

He taught me Grammar.

ANNOTATIO.

* *Quorum activa duos Caſus regunt, eorum Paſſiva poſteriorem retinent ; ut,*

The Paſſives of ſuch Active Verbs as govern two Caſes, do ſtill retain the laſt of them ; as,

ᵃ*Accuſor* ᵇ*furti.*

I am accuſed of Theft.

Virgilius ᵃ*comparatur* ᵇ*Homero.*

Virgil is compared to *Homer.*

ᵃ*Doceor* ᵇ*Grammaticam.*

I am taught Grammar.

REG. VII.

PRETIUM rei à quovis Verbo in Ablativo regitur ; ut,

RULE VII.

THE Price of a Thing is governed in the Ablative by any Verb ; as,

F 4   ᵃ*Emi*

Num. 32. NOTE, 1. That among the Verbs that govern two *Accuſatives*, are alſo reckoned theſe following ;

1. CELO ; as, *Cela hanc rem uxorem,* Conceal this from your Wife, *Plaut.* But we can ſay alſo, *Celo te de hac re,* and *Celo tibi hanc rem.*

2. Verbs of CLOATHING ; as, *Induit ſe calceos,* He put on his Shoes. But theſe have more commonly the *Ablative* of the Thing without a *Preposition* ; as, *Veſtit ſe purpura,* He cloaths himſelf with Purple. *Induo* and *Exuo* have frequently the Perſon in the *Dative,* and the *Thing* in the *Accuſative* ; as, *Thoracem ſibi induit,* He put on his Breaſt-plate.

3. MONEO ; as, *Id unum te moneo,* I put you in Mind of this one Thing. But, unleſs it is ſome general Word, [as, *Hoc, illud, id,* &c.] *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio,* have either the *Genitive,* as, *Admoneo te officii,* I put you in Mind of your Duty : Or the *Ablative* with *de* ; as, *De hac re te ſæpius admonui,* I have frequently warned you of this.

NOTE, 2. That Verbs of *Asking* often change the *Accuſative* of the Perſon into an *Ablative* with the *Preposition* ; as, *Oro, exoro, peto, poſtulo hoc a te* ; I intreat this of you : Some always, as, *Contendo, quæro, ſcitor, ſciſcitor hoc a te.* Finally, ſome have the *Accuſative* of the Perſon, and the *Ablative* of the Thing with *de* ; as, *Interrogo, conſulo, percontor te de hac re.*

^a*Emi librum* ^b*duobus af-fibus.*
I bought a Book for two Shillings.

^a*Vendidit hic* ^b*auro patriam.*
This Man sold his Country for Gold.

Demofthenes ^a*docuit* ^b*talento.*
Demofthenes taught for a Talent.

35 * Excipiuntur hi Genitivi, *Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris;* ut,
These Genitives, Tanti, quanti, pluris, minoris, are excepted; as,

^b*Quanti* ^a*conftitit?*
How much cost it?

Affe & ^b*pluris.*
A Shilling and more.

36 * VERBA æstimandi regunt hujufmodi Genitivos, *Magni, parvi, nihili,* &c. ut,
VERBS of valuing govern fuch Genitives as thefe, Magni, parvi, nihili, &c. as,

^a*Æftimo te* ^b*magni.*
I value you much.

REG. VIII.

37 * VERBA copiæ & inopiæ plerumque Ablativum regunt; ut,
RULE VIII.
VERBS of Plenty and Scarceness for the moft part govern the Ablative; as,

^a*Abundat* ^b*divitiis.*
He abounds in Riches.

^a*Caret omni* ^b*culpâ.*
He has no Fault.

38 * *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vefcor,* regunt Ablativum; ut,
Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vefcor, govern the Ablative; as,

^a*Utitur* ^b*fraude.*
He ufes Deceit.

^a*Abutitur* ^b*libris.*
He abufes Books.

§ 2. Re-

Num. 35. NOTE, That if the *Subftantive* be expreffed, they are put in the *Ablative*; as, *Quanto pretio? Minore mercede.*

Num. 36. 1. Verbs of *valuing* are, *Æftimo, pendo, facio, habeo, duco, puto, taxo.*

2. The reft of the Genitives are, *Minoris, minimi, tanti, quanti, pluris, majoris, plurimi, maximi, nauci, flocci, pili, affis, teruncii, hujus:* Also *Æqui* and *boni* after *facio* and *confulo.*

NOTE, 1. That we fay alfo, *Æftimo, magno, parvo,* fupple *pretio.*

NOTE, 2. That *Alvarus* excludes *majoris,* as wanting Authority. But there is an Example of it to be found in *Phædrus,* II. 5. 25.

> *Multo majoris alapæ mecum veneunt.*

Num. 37. Sometimes they have the Genitive; as, *Eget æris,* He wants Money, *Hor. Implentur veteris Bacchi,* They are filled with old Wine, *Virg.*

NOTE, That Verbs of *Loading* and *Unloading,* and the like, belong to this Rule; as, *Navis oneratur mercibus,* The Ship is loaded with Goods. *Levabo te hoc onere,* I will eafe you of this Burden. *Liberavit nos metu,* He delivered us from Fear.

Num. 38. To thefe Verbs add *Nitor, gaudeo, muto, dono, munero, communico,*

§ 2. *Regimen Verborum Imper-*
ſonalium.

REG. IX.

VERBUM imperſonale re-
git Dativum ; ut,
ᵃ *Expedit* ᵇ *reipublicæ.*
ᵃ *Licet* ᵇ *nemini peccare.*

* EXCEP. 1. *Refert* & *In-*
tereſt Genitivum poſtulant ; ut,

ᵃ *Refert* ᵇ *patris.*
ᵃ *Intereſt* ᵇ *omnium.*

* At *mea, tua, ſua, noſtra,*
veſtra, ponuntur in Accuſati-
vo plurali ; ut,
Non ᵇ *mea* ᵃ *refert.*

* EXCEP. 2. Hæc quinque,
Miſeret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet
& *piget* regunt Accuſativum
perſonæ, cum Genitivo rei ;
ut,
ᵃ *Miſeret* ᵇ *me* ᵇᵇ *tui.*
ᵃ *Pœnitet* ᵇ *me* ᵇᵇ *peccati.*
ᵃ *Tædet* ᵇ *me* ᵇᵇ *vitæ.*

* EXCEP. 3. Hæc quatuor,
Decet, delectat, juvat, oportet,
regunt Accuſativum perſonæ
cum Infinitivo ; ut,

§ 2. The Government of Impersonal Verbs.

RULE IX.

AN *Imperſonal Verb go-*39
verns the Dative; as,
It is profitable for the State.
No Man is allowed to ſin.

EXCEP. 1. *Refert* and In-40
tereſt *require the Genitive ;*
as,
It concerns my Father.
It is the Intereſt of all.

But mea, tua, ſua, noſtra,41
veſtra, *are put in the Accuſa-*
tive Plural ; as,
I am not concerned.

EXCEP. 2. *Theſe five,* Mi-42
ſeret, pœnitet, pudet, tædet
and piget, *govern the Accu-*
ſative of a Perſon, with the
Genitive of a Thing ; as,
I pity you.
I repent of my Sin.
I am weary of my Life.

EXCEP. 3. *Theſe four,* De-43
cet, delectat, juvat, oportet,
govern the Accuſative of the
Perſon with the Infinitive ;
as,

ᵃ *Dele-*

munico, victito, beo, fido, impertior, dignor, naſcor, creor, afficio, conſto, proſe-
quor, &c.

NOTE, That *Potior* ſometimes governs the *Genitive* ; as, *Potiri hoſtium,*
To get his Enemies into his Power. *Potiri rerum,* To have the chief
Rule.

Num. 39. Such as theſe, *Accidit, contingit, evenit, conducit, expedit, lubet,*
libet, licet, placet, diſplicet, vacat, reſtat, præſtat, liquet, nocet, dolet, ſufficit,
&c. Together with the *Dative* they have commonly an *Infinitive* after
them, which is ſuppoſed to ſupply the Place of a *Nominative* before them.

Num. 42. NOTE, That this *Genitive* is frequently turned into the *In-*
finitive ; as, *Pœnitet me peccaſſe* ; *Tædet me vivere* ; and ſo they fall in with
the following Rule.

^a *Delectat* ^b *me* ^{bb} *studere.* | I delight to study.
Non ^a *decet* ^b *te* ^{bb} *rixari.* | It does not become you to scold.

§ 3. REGIMEN *Infinitivi, Participiorum, Gerundiorum & Supinorum.*

§ 3. The GOVERNMENT of the Infinitive, Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

REG. X.

RULE X.

44 UNUM Verbum regit aliud in Infinitivo ; ut,
  ^a *Cupio* ^b *discere.*

ONE Verb governs another in the Infinitive ; as,
I desire to learn.

REG. XI.

RULE XI.

45 PARTICIPIA, Gerundia & Supina regunt Casum suorum verborum ; ut,
  ^a *Amans* ^b *virtutem.*
  ^a *Carens* ^b *fraude.*

PARTICIPLES, Gerunds and Supines govern the Case of their own Verbs ; as,
Loving Virtue.
Wanting Guile.

1. GERUNDIA.

1. GERUNDS.

46 1. GERUNDIUM in DUM Nominativi Casûs cum verbo [*est*] regit Dativum ; ut,
  ^a *Vivendum est* ^b *mihi recte.*
  ^a *Moriendum est* ^b *omnibus.*

1. THE Gerund in DUM of the Nominative Case with the Verb [*est*] governs the Dative ; as,
I must live well.
All must die.

47 2. Gerundium in DI regitur à Substantivis vel Adjectivis ; ut,
  ^a *Tempus* ^b *legendi.*
  ^a *Cupidus* ^b *discendi.*

2. The Gerund in DI is governed by Substantives or Adjectives ; as,
Time of reading.
Desirous to learn.

3. Ge-

Num. 43. NOTE, That *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the *Subjunctive Mood*, UT being understood ; as, *Oportet facias,* [You must do it] for *Oportet te facere.*

Attinet, Pertinet and *Spectat,* when used *impersonally,* (which rarely happens) have the *Accusative* with *ad,* as was observed above, *p.* 85.
Num. 44. Sometimes it is governed by *Adjectives* ; as, *Cupidus & cupiens discere.*

NOTE, That the Verb *Cœpit* or *cœperunt* is sometimes understood ; as, *Omnes mihi invidere* ; supple *cœperunt,* They all began to envy me.
Num. 46. This *Dative* is frequently understood ; as, *Eundum est,* (supple *nobis*) We must go.

NOTE, That this *Gerund* always imports *Necessity,* and the *Dative* after it is the *Person* on whom the *Necessity* lies.
Num. 47. 1. The *Substantives* are such as these, *Amor, causa, gratia, studium, tempus, occasio, ars, otium, voluntas, cupido,* &c.

2. The *Adjectives* are generally *Verbals,* mentioned *Num.* 14.

3. Gerundium in DO Dativi Casûs regitur ab Adjectivis utilitatem vel aptitudinem ſignificantibus ; ut,

Charta [a] *utilis* [b] *ſcribendo.*

3. *The Gerund in DO of* 48 *the Dative Caſe is governed by Adjectives ſignifying Uſefulneſs or Fitneſs ; as,*

Paper uſeful for writing.

4. Gerundium in DUM Accuſativi Casûs regitur à Præpoſitionibus *ad* vel *inter* ; ut,

Promptus [a] *ad* [b] *audiendum.*
Attentus [a] *inter* [b] *docendum.*

4. *The Gerund in DUM of* 49 *the Accuſative Caſe is governed by the Prepoſitions* ad *or* inter; *as,*

Ready to hear.
Attentive in Time of teaching.

5. Gerundium in DO Ablativi Casûs regitur à Præpoſitionibus, *a, ab, de, e, ex,* vel *in* ; ut,

Pœna [a] *à* [b] *peccando abſterret.*
* Vel ſine Præpoſitione, ut Ablativus Modi vel Cauſæ ; ut,

Memoria [b] *excolendo* [a] *augetur.*
[a] *Defeſſus ſum* [b] *ambulando.*

5. *The Gerund in DO of* 50 *the Ablative Caſe is governed by the* repoſitions, a, ab, de, e, ex *or* in; *as,*

Puniſhment frightens from ſinning.
* *Or without a Prepoſiti-* 51 *on, as the Ablative of Manner or Cauſe ; as,*

The Memory is improved by exerciſing it.
I am wearied with walking.

6. Gerundia Accuſativum regentia vertuntur eleganter in Participia in DUS, quæ cum ſuis Subſtantivis in Genere, Numero & Caſu concordant ; ut,

Petendum eſt pacem.
Tempus petendi pacem.

6. *Gerunds governing the* 52 *Accuſative are elegantly turned into the Participles in* DUS, *which agree with their Subſtantives in Gender, Number and Caſe ; as,*

Petenda eſt pax.
Tempus petendæ pacis.

Ad

Num. 48. The *Adjective* of *Fitneſs* is often underſtood ; as, *Non eſt ſolvendo*; He is not able to pay, [ſupple *aptus* or *par.*]

NOTE, That ſometimes this *Gerund* is governed by a Verb ; as, *Epidicum quærendo operam dabo,* I'll endeavour to find our Epidicus, *Plaut.*

Num. 49. NOTE, 1. That it hath ſometimes, but very rarely, the Prepoſition *ob* and *ante*, as, *Ob abſolvendum munus,* For finiſhing your Task, *Cic. Ante domandum,* Before they are tamed or broken, *Virg.* ſpeaking of Horſes.

NOTE, 2. That what was the *Gerund* in *Dum* of the Nominative with the Verb *eſt, fuit,* &c. becomes the *Accuſative* with *eſſe* ; as, *Omnibus moriendum eſſe novimus* ; We know that all muſt die.

Ad petendum pacem.	Ad petendam pacem.
A petendo pacem.	A petenda pace.
SUPINA.	**SUPINES.**
53 * 1. Supinum in UM ponitur poſt verbum motûs; ut, ᵃ *Abiit* ᵇ *deambulatum.*	1. The Supine in UM is put after a Verb of Motion; as, He hath gone to walk.
54 * 2. Supinum in U ponitur poſt nomen adjectivum; ut, ᵃ *Facile* ᵇ *dictu.*	2. The Supine in U is put after an Adjective Noun; as, Eaſy to tell, *or* to be told.
	§ 4. Con.

Num. 52. Add to theſe the *Gerunds* of *Fungor, fruor* and *potior.*

Theſe *Participles,* in DUS are commonly called GERUNDIVES.

NOTE, 1. That the *Subſtantive* muſt always be of the ſame Caſe that the *Gerund* was of.

NOTE, 2. That becauſe of its noiſy Sound, the *Gerund* in di is ſeldom changed into the *Genitive Plural;* but either the *Accuſative* is retained; as, *Studio patres veſtros videndi,* rather than *Patrum veſtrorum videndorum;* or it is turned into the Genitive Plural, without changing the Gerund; as, *Patrum veſtrorum videndi ſtudio.* Thus *Valla* and *Farnabius;* but ſee my *Gram. maj. vol.* 2. *p.* 276.

Num. 53. The Supine in U M is elegantly uſed with the Verb *Eo,* when we ſignify that one ſets himſelf about the doing of a Thing; as, *In mea vita tu laudem is quæſitum?* Are you going to advance your Reputation at the Hazard of my Life, *Ter.* And this is the Reaſon why this Supine with *iri* taken imperſonally, ſupplies the Place of the *Future* of the *Infin. Paſſive.*

Some general Remarks on the Conſtruction of Participles, Gerunds and Supines.

NOTE, 1. That *Participles, Gerunds* and *Supines,* have a twofold *Conſtruction;* one as they partake of the Nature of *Verbs,* by which they govern a certain *Caſe* after them; another as they partake of the Nature of *Nouns,* and conſequently are ſubject to the ſame Rules with them: Thus,

1. A *Participle* is always an *Adjective* agreeing with its *Subſt.* by *Num.* 1.

2. A *Gerund* is a *Subſtantive,* and conſtrued as follows: (1.) That in *dum* of the *Nominative* by *Num.* 2. Of the *Accuſ.* by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *di* by *Num.* 11. or 14. (3.) That in *do* of the *Dat.* by *Num.* 16. of the *Ablat.* by *Num.* 69, 71. or 55.

3. A *Supine* is alſo a *Subſtantive,* (1.) That in *um,* governed by *ad* underſtood by *Num.* 68. (2.) That in *u* governed by *in* underſtood, by *Num.* 71.

NOTE, 2. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Active,* the *firſt Supine* and the *Gerund* in *dam,* with the Prepoſition *ad,* are thus diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* is uſed after *Verbs* of *Motion;* The *Infinitive* after any other *Verbs;* The *Gerund* in *dum* with *ad* after *Adjective* Nouns. But theſe laſt are frequently to be met with after *Verbs* of *Motion;* and Poets uſe alſo the *Infinitive* after *Adjectives.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Preſent* of the *Infinitive Paſſive* and the *laſt Supine,* are thus diſtinguiſhed: The *Supine* hath always an *Adjective* before it; which the *Infinitive* hath not, unleſs (as I ſaid) among Poets.

§ 4. *Constructio* CIRCUM-STANTIARUM.

§ 4. The Construction of Circumstances (a).

1. *Causa, Modus & Instrumentum.*

1. The Cause, Manner and Instrument.

REG. XII.

CAUSA, Modus & Instrumentum ponuntur in Ablativo; ut,

ᵃ *Palleo* ᵇ *metu*.
ᵃ *Fecit suo* ᵇ *more*.
ᵃ *Scribo* ᵇ *calamo*.

RULE XII.

THE Cause, Manner and 55 Instrument are put in the Ablative; as,

I am pale for Fear.
He did it after his own Way.
I write with a Pen.

2. *Locus.*
REG. XIII.

1. NOMEN oppidi ponitur in Ge-

2. Place.
RULE XIII.

THE Name of a Town 56 is put in the Genitive,

nitivo

(a) *Adjective* Nouns, but especially *Verbs*, have frequently some CIRCUMSTANCES going along with them in Discourse; the most considerable whereof, with respect to Construction, are these five. 1. The *Cause* or *Reason* why any Thing is done. 2. The *Way* or *Manner* how it is done. 3. The *Instrument* or *Thing* wherewith it is done. 4. The *Place* where. And 5. The *Time* when it is done.

Num. 55. NOTE, 1. That the CAUSE is known by the Question CUR or QUARE? *Why? Wherefore?* &c. The MANNER by the Question QUOMODO? *How?* And the INSTRUMENT by the Question QUO-CUM? *Wherewith?*

NOTE, 2. That the *Preposition* is frequently exprest with the *Cause* and *Manner*; as, *Præ gaudio*, For Joy. *Propter amorem*, For Love. *Ob culpam*, For a Fault. *Cum summo labore*, With great Labour. *Per dedecus*, With Disgrace. But the *Preposition* [CUM] is never added to the *Instrument*: For we cannot say, *Scribo cum calamo; Cum oculis vidi*.

NOTE, 3. But here we must carefully distinguish between the *Instrument*, and what is called the *Ablativus Comitatus*, or, *Ablative of Concomitancy*, *i. e.* signifying that something was in *Company* with another; for then the *Preposition* [CUM] is generally exprest; as, *Ingressus est cum gladio*, He entered with a Sword, *i. e.* Having a Sword with him or about him.

NOTE, 4. That to *Cause* some refer the *Matter* of which any Thing is made; as, *Clypeus ære fabricatus*, A Shield made of Brass: But (except with the Poets) the *Preposition* is for the most part exprest.

NOTE, 5. That to *Manner* some refer the *Adjunct*, *i. e.* something joined to another Thing; as, *Terra amæna floribus*, A Land pleasant with Flowers. *Mons nive candidus*, A Hill white with Snow.

NOTE, 6. That to *Instrument* some refer *Conficior dolore, inediâ*, &c. *Prosequor odio, amore*, &c. *Afficio te honore, contumeliâ*, &c. *Lacesso verbis asperis*, &c.

nîtivo, cùm quæstio fit per UBI, ut,

     a *Vixit* b *Roma.*
     a *Mortuus est* b *Londini.*

when the Question is made by UBI, [Where.] as,

     He lived at Rome.
     He died at London.

57   * EXCEP. Si vero sit tertiæ Declinationis, aut Pluralis Numeri, in Ablativo effertur; ut,

     a *Habitat* b *Carthagine.*
     a *Studuit* b *Parisiis.*

     EXCEP. *But if it is of the third Declension, or of the Plural Number, it is exprest in the Ablative; as,*

     He dwells at Carthage.
     He studied at Paris.

58   * 2. Cùm quæstio fit per QUO, nomen oppidi in Accusativo regitur; ut,

     a *Venit* b *Edimburgum.*
     a *Profectus est* b *Athenas.*

     2. *When the Question is made by* QUO, [Whither,] *the Name of a Town is governed in the Accusative; as,*

     He came to Edinburgh.
     He went to Athens.

59   * 3. Si quæratur per UNDE vel QUA, nomen oppidi ponitur in Ablativo; ut,

     a *Discessit* b *Aberdonia.*
     b *Laodicea iter* a *faciebat.*

     3. *If the Question is made by* UNDE, [Whence,] *or* QUA, [by, or through what Place,] *the Name of a Town is put in the Ablative; as,*

     He went from Aberdeen.
     He went through Laodicea.

60   * 4. *Domus* & *Rus* eodem modo quo oppidorum nomina construuntur; ut,

     4. *Domus* and Rus *are construed the same Way as Names of Towns; as,*

Manet Domi, He stays at home.   *Domum revertitur,* He returns home.   *Domo accersitus sum,* I am called from home. *Vivit rure* or *ruri. Abiit rus. Rediit rure.*

61   5. Nominibus regionum, provinciarum, & aliorum locorum, non dictis, Præpositio ferè additur; ut,

     5. *To Names of Countries, Provinces, and other Places, not mentioned, the Preposition is generally added; as,*

UBI ? *Natus in Scotia, in Fifa, in urbe,* &c.
QUO ? *Abiit in Scotiam, in Fifam, in* [vel *ad*] *urbem,* &c.
UNDE ? *Rediit è Scotia, è Fifa, ex urbe,* &c.
QUA ? *Transit per Scotiam, per Fifam, per urbem,* &c.

ANNO-

Num. 56, &c. NOTE, 1. That the *Preposition* is frequently added to *Names* of *Towns,* (especially when the Question is *Quo? Unde?* or *Qua?*) and sometimes omitted to *Names* of *Countries, Provinces,* &c.

ANNOTATIO.

* Diſtantia unius loci ab alio ponitur in Accuſativo, interdum & in Ablativo ; ut,	The *Diſtance of one* Place 62 *from another is put in the Accuſative, and ſometimes in the Ablative ; as,*
Glaſcua ᵃ diſtat Edimburgo triginta ᵇ millia paſſuum ; ᵇ Iter vel ᵇ itinere unius diei.	Glaſgow is thirty Miles diſtant from Edinburgh ; One Day's Journey.
3. *Tempus.*	3. **Time.**
REG. XIV.	RULE XIV.
*1. **T**EMPUS ponitur in Ablativo, cùm quæſtio ſit per QUANDO ; ut,	1. **T**IME *is put in the Ab-*63 *lative, when the Queſtion is made by* QUANDO, [When ;] *as,*
ᵃ Venit ᵇ hora tertia.	He came at three a'Clock.
* 2. Cùm quæſtio ſit per QUAMDIU, tempus ponitur in Accuſativo vel Ablativo ; ſed ſæpius Accuſativo ; ut,	2. *When the Queſtion is* 64 *made by* QUAMDIU, [How long,] *Time is put in the Accuſative or Ablative, but oftner in the Accuſative ; as,*
ᵃ Manſit paucos ᵇ dies. Sex ᵇ menſibus ᵃ abfuit.	He ſtaid a few Days. He was away ſix Months.

De

NOTE, 2. That *Humi, Militiæ* and *Belli* are alſo uſed in the Genitive when the Queſtion is made by *Ubi ?* as, *Procumbit humi,* He lies down on the Ground. *Domi militiæque unà fuimus,* We were together both at home and abroad, *or* in Peace and War, *Ter. Belli domique agitabatur,* Was managed both in Peace and War, *Salluſt.*

NOTE, 3. That when the Name of a *Town* is put in the *Genitive, in urbe* is underſtood, and therefore we cannot ſay, *Natus eſt Roma urbis nobilis,* but *urbe nobili.*

¶ Theſe Rules concerning Names of Towns may be thus expreſt,

The Name of a Town after { IN *or* AT / TO *or* UNTO / FROM *or* THROUGH } is put in the { Gen. *or* Abl. † / Accuſative. / Ablative. }

† *i. e.* When it is of the third Declenſion, or of the Plural Number. But when AT ſignifies *about* or *near* a Place, we make Uſe of the Prepoſition *ad* ; as, *Bellum quod ad Trojam geſſerat,* Virg.

Num. 63 and 64. Theſe two Rules may be thus expreſt ;

1. Nouns that denote a *preciſe* TERM of TIME are put in the *Ablative.*
2. Nouns that denote CONTINUANCE of *Time* are put in the *Accuſative* or *Ablative.*

De Ablativo absoluto.
REG. XV.

65 * SUBSTANTIVUM cum Participio, quorum Casus à nulla alia dictione pendet, ponuntur in Ablativo absoluto; ut,

   ᵃ Sole ᵇ oriente fugiunt tenebræ.

   ᵃ Opere ᵇ peracto ludemus.

III. Constructio Vocum Indeclinabilium.

1. *Adverbiorum.*

66 * 1. ADVERBIA quædam temporis,

Of the Ablative absolute.
RULE XV.

A SUBSTANTIVE with a Participle, whose Case depends upon no other Word, are put in the Ablative absolute; as,

   The Sun rising [or while the Sun riseth] Darkness flies away.

   Our Work being finished [or when our Work is finished] we will play.

III. *The Construction of Words Indeclinable.*

1. Of Adverbs.

1. SOME Adverbs of Time, Place and loci

Num. 65. NOTE, 1. This *Ablative* is called ABSOLUTE or *Independent*, because it is not directed or determined by any other Word; for if the *Substantive* (which is principally to be regarded) hath a *Word* before that should govern it, or a *Verb* coming after, to which it should be a *Nominative*, then the Rule does not take Place.

NOTE, 2. That *Having, Being,* or a Word ending in *ing,* are the ordinary *Signs* of this *Ablative.*

NOTE, 3. That (to prevent our mistaking the true *Substantive*) when a *Participle-perfect* is englished by HAVING, we are carefully to advert whether it is *Passive* or *Deponent.* If it is *Passive*, we are to change it into BEING, its true *English.* If it is *Deponent*, there needs no Change, for HAVING is the proper *English* of it. The Use of this Note will appear by the following Example.

James having said these Things, departed.	*Jacobus hæc locutus abiit.* Dep.
James, these Things being said, departed.	*Jacobus his dictis abiit.* Pass.
Having promised a great Reward.	*Pollicitus magnam mercedem.* Dep.
A great Reward being promised.	*Magnâ mercede promissâ.* Pass.

NOTE, 4. That when there is no *Participle* exprest in Latin, *existente* [being] is understood; as, *Me puero,* I being a Boy. *Saturno Rege,* Saturn being King. *Civitate nondum liberâ,* The State not being yet free.

NOTE, 5. That the Participle may be resolved into *Dum, cum, quando, si, postquam,* &c. [While, seeing, when, if, after] with the *Verb,* either in *English* or *Latin.*

loci & quantitatis regunt Genitivum ; ut,

^a *Pridie illius* ^b *diei.*
^a *Ubique* ^b *gentium.*
^a *Satis est* ^b *verborum.*

* 2. Quædam Adverbia derivata regunt Casum primitiorum ; ut,

^b *Omnium* ^a *elegantissimè loquitur.*
Vivere ^a *convenienter* ^b *naturæ.*

2. *Præpositionum.*

P RÆPOSITIONES
Ad, apud, ante, &c.
Accusativum regunt ; ut,
^a *Ad* ^b *patrem.*

2. Præpositiones *A, ab, abs,*
&c. regunt Ablativum ; ut,

^a *A* ^b *patre.*

3. Præpositiones *In, sub, super* & *subter,* regunt Accusativum cùm motus ad locum significatur ; ut,
Eo ^a *in* ^b *scholam.*
^a *Sub* ^b *mœnia tendit,* Virg.
Incidit ^a *super* ^b *agmina,* Id.
Ducit ^a *subter* ^b *fastigia tecti,* Id.

¶ At si motus vel quies in loco significetur, *In* & *sub* regunt Ablativum ; *Super* & *subter* vel Accusativum vel Ablativum ; ut,
Sedeo vel *discurro* ^a *in* ^b *schola.*
Recubo vel *ambulo* ^a *sub* ^b *umbra.*
Sedens ^a *super* ^b *arma,* Virg.
^b *Fronde* ^a *super viridi,* Id.

Quantity governs the Genitive ; as,

The Day before that Day.
Every where.
There's enough of Words.

2. *Some Derivative Adverbs govern the Case of their Primitives ; as,* 67

He speaks the most elegantly of all.
To live agreeably to Nature.

2. Of Prepositions.

1. T HE Prepositions *Ad* 68
apud, ante, &c. govern the Accusative ; as,
To the Father.

2. *The Prepositions* A, ab, 69
abs, *&c. govern the Ablative ; as,*
From the Father.

3. *The Prepositions* In, sub, 70
super *and* subter, *govern the Accusative when Motion to a Place is signified ; as,*
I go into the School.
He goes under the Walls.
It fell upon the Troops.
He brings [him] under the Roof of the House.

¶ *But if Motion or Rest in* 71
a Place be signified, In *and* sub *govern the Ablative ;* Super *and* subter *either the Accusative or Ablative ; as,*
I sit *or* run up and down in the School.
I ly *or* walk under the Shadow.
Sitting above the Arms.
Upon the green Grass.

G   *Vena*

Venæ ª *fubter* ᵇ *cutem difper-fæ,* Plin.	The Veins difperfed under the Skin.
ª *Subter* ᵇ *littore,* Catull.	Beneath the Shore.
4. ¶ *Præpofitio in compofitione eundem fæpe cafum regit quem extra; ut,*	4. *A Prepofition oftimes governs the fame Cafe in Compofition that it does without it; as,*
ª *Adeamus* ᵇ *fcholam.*	Let us go to the School.
ª *Exeamus* ᵇ *fchola.*	Let us go out of the School.

3. *Inter-*

¶ The Prepofitions, with the Cafes they govern, are contained in thefe Verfes.

1. Hæ quartum adfcifcunt cafum fibi Præpofituræ;
   Ad, penes, adverfum, cis, citra, adverfus, & *extra,*
   Ultra, poft, præter, juxta, per, pone, fecundum,
   Ergo, apud, ante, fecus, trans, fuper, propter, & *intra,*
   Queis addas *contra, circum, circa, inter, ob, infra.*
2. Hæ fextum pofcunt; *A cum, tenus, abs, ab,* & *abfque,*
   Atque *palam, pro, præ, clam, de, e, ex, fine, coram.*
3. *Sub. fuper, in, fubter,* quartum fextumque, requirunt.

NOTE, 1. That *Verfus* and *Ufque* are put after their Cafes; as, *Italiam verfus,* Towards Italy; *Occanum ufque,* As far as the Ocean. But (as we have already obferved, Page 67.) thefe are properly *Adverbs,* the *Prepofition* AD being underftood.

NOTE, 2. That *Tenus* is alfo put after its Cafe; as, *Mento tenus,* Up to the Chin.

NOTE, 3. That *Tenus* governs the *Genitive Plural,* 1. When the Word wants the *Singular;* as, *Cumarum tenus,* As far as [the Town] *Cumæ.* 2. When we fpeak of Things of which we have naturally but two; as, *Crurum tenus,* Up to the Legs.

NOTE, 4. That *A* and *E* are put before *Confonants, Ab* and *Ex* before *Vowels* and *Confonants; Abs* before *t* and *q.*

NOTE, 5. That *fubter* hath very rarely the *Ablat.* and only among Poets.

NOTE, 6. That in Englifh IN is commonly the Sign of the *Ablative,* INTO of the *Accufative.*

NOTE, 7. IN for *erga, contra, per, fupra,, ad,* &c. governs the *Accuf.* as, *Amor in patriam. Quid ego in te commifi? Crefcit in dies fingulos. Imperium Regum in proprios greges,* Horat. *Pifces in cænam empti.* But IN for *inter* governs the *Ablative;* as, *In amicis habere,* Salluft.

SUB for *circa* governs the *Accufat.* as, *Sub cænam.*

SUPER for *ultra, præter* and *inter,* governs the *Accufat.* as, *Super Garamantas,* Virg. *Super gratiam fuam,* Salluft. *In fermone fuper cænam nato,* Suet. For *de* it governs the *Ablat.* as, *Super hac re nimis,* Cic.

Num. 72. NOTE, That this Rule only takes Place when the Prepofition may be diffolved from the Verb, and put before the Cafe by itfelf; as, *Alloquor patrem, i. e. Loquor ad patrem.* And even then the Prepofition is frequently repeated; as, *Exire e finibus fuis,* Cæf.

3. *Interjectionum.*

1. INTERJECTIONES O, *heu* & *proh*, regunt Vocativum, interdum Accuſativum; ut,

ᵃ O *formoſe* ᵇ *puer.*
ᵃ *Heu* ᵇ *me miſerum!*

* 2. *Hei* & *Væ* regunt Dativum: ut,

ᵃ *Hei* ᵇ *mihi!*
ᵃ *Væ* ᵇ *vobis.*

4. *Conjunctionum.*

1. CONJUNCTIONES *Et, ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel,* & quædam aliæ, connectunt ſimiles Caſus & Modos; ut,

Honora ᵇ *patrem* ᵃ ℰ ᵇ *matrem.*
Nec ᵇ *ſcribit,* ᵃ *nec* ᵇ *legit.*

2. *Ut, quo, licet, ne, utinam* & *dummodo* Subjunctivo Modo ferè ſemper adhærent; ut,

Lego ᵃ *ut* ᵇ *diſcam.*
ᵃ *Utinam* ᵇ *ſaperes.*

3. Of Interjections.

1. THE Interjections O, 73 Heu *and* Proh, *govern the* Vocative, *and ſometimes the* Accuſative; *as,*

O fair Boy.
Ah Wretch that I am!

2. Hei *and* Væ *govern the* 74 Dative; *as,*

Ah me!
Wo to you.

4. Of Conjunctions.

1. THE Conjunctions Et, 75 ac, atque, nec, neque, aut, vel, *and ſome others, couple like* Caſes *and* Moods; *as,*

Honour your Father and Mother.
He neither writes nor reads.

2. Ut, quo, licet, ne, uti- 76 nam *and* dummodo *are for the moſt part joined with the* Subjunctive Mood; *as,*

I read that I may learn.
I wiſh you were wiſe.

G 2   SYN-

Numb. 75. To theſe add *Quam, niſi, præterquam, an,* and *Adverbs of Likeneſs.* The Reaſon of this *Conſtruction* is becauſe the Words ſo coupled depend all upon the ſame Word, which is expreſt to one of them, and underſtood to the other.

Numb. 76. To theſe add all *Indefinite* Words, that is, *Interrogatives,* whether *Nouns, Pronouns, Adverbs* or *Conjunctions,* when taken in a *doubtful* or *indefinite* Senſe; ſuch as, *Quis, uter, quantus,* &c. *Ubi, quo, unde,* &c. *Cur, quare, quamobrem, num, an, anne,* &c. (See *Page* 65 and 70.) They generally become *Indefinites,* when another Word comes before them in the Sentence, ſuch as, *Scio, neſcio, video, intelligo, dubito,* and the like; as, *Ubi eſt frater tuus? Neſcio ubi ſit. An venturus eſt? Dubito an venturus ſit.*

NE the *Adverb of Forbidding* requires the *Imperative* or *Subjunctive;* as, *Ne time,* or *ne timeas.* See Page 47.

Dum, quàm, quod, ſi, ſin, ni, niſi, etſi, etiamſi, priuſquam, ſimulac, ſiquidem, quandoquidem, &c. are joined ſometimes with the *Indicative,* and ſometimes with the *Subjunctive.*

SYNTAXEOS *Synopsis.*	A Summary of *SYNTAX.*
Sive,	Or,
Genuina & maximè necessaria Constructionis Regulæ, ad quas cetera omnes reducuntur.	The true and most necessary Rules of Construction, to which all the rest are reduced.

AXIOMATA.	First PRINCIPLES.
I. OMNIS Oratio constat ex Nomine & Verbo.	I. EVERY Speech [or Sentence] *consists of a Noun and a Verb.*
II. Omnis Nominativus habet suum Verbum expressum vel suppressum.	II. *Every Nominative hath its own Verb exprest or understood.*
III. Omne Verbum finitum habet suum Nominativum expressum vel suppressum.	III. *Every finite Verb hath its own Nominative exprest or understood.*
IV. Omne Adjectivum habet suum Substantivum expressum vel suppressum.	IV. *Every Adjective hath its own Substantive exprest or understood.*

Sex Casuum Constructio.	The Construction of the six Cases.
I. OMNE Verbum finitum expressum vel suppressum concordat cum Nominativo expresso vel suppresso, in Numero & Persona; ut,	I. EVERY Verb of the Finite Mood exprest or *understood agrees with its Nominative exprest or understood, in Number and Person; as,*
Puer legit. [Homines] *Aiunt.* *Romani* [cœperunt] *festinare.*	The Boy reads. They say. The Romans made haste.

II. Omnis

II. Omnis Genitivus regitur Subſtantivo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo ; ut,

Liber fratris.

Eſt [officium] *patris.*

III. Dativus Acquiſitionis, *i. e. cui aliquid acquiritur vel adimitur*] cuivis Nomini aut Verbo expreſſo vel ſuppreſſo ungitur ; ut,

Dedi Petro.

Cui dediſti ?

[Dedi] *Petro.*

Utilis bello.

Non eſt [aptus] *ſolvendo.*

IV. Omnis Accuſativus regitur à Verbo activo vel † Præpoſitione expreſſis vel ſuppreſſis ; ut,

Amo Deum ;

*& * [amo] *parentes.*

Ad patrem.

Abiit [ad] *Londinum.*

¶ Aut Infinitivo præponitur expreſſus vel ſuppreſſus ; ut,

Dicit ſe ſcribere.

Licet mihi [me] *eſſe bonum.*

V. Omnis Vocativus abſolutè ponitur, additâ nonnunquam Interjectione O ; ut,

O Dave.

Heus Syre.

VI. Omnis Ablativus regitur à † Præpoſitione expreſſa vel ſuppreſſa ; ut,

A puero.

Exultat [præ] *gaudio.*

II. *Every Genitive is governed by a Subſtantive expreſt or underſtood ; as,*

The Book of my Brother.

It is the Duty of a Father.

III. *The Dative of Acquiſition* [i. e. to which any thing is acquired, or from which it is taken] *is joined to any Noun or Verb expreſt or underſtood ; as,*

I gave it to Peter.

To whom did you give it ?

To Peter.

Profitable for War.

He is not able to pay.

IV. *Every Accuſative is governed by an active Verb, or a † Prepoſition expreſt or underſtood ; as,*

I love God ;

and my Parents.

To the Father.

He hath gone to London.

¶ *Or is put before the Infinitive expreſt or underſtood ; as,*

He ſays that he is writing.

I may be good.

V. *Every Vocative is placed abſolutely, the Interjection* O *being ſometimes added ; as,*

O Davus.

Come hither Syrus.

VI. *Every Ablative is governed by a † Prepoſition expreſt or underſtood ; as,*

From a Child.

He leaps for Joy.

APPEN-

† See *Page* 67, and *Larger Syntax, Page* 97 and 98.

APPENDIX.

I. OMNE Adjectivum concordat cum Substantivo expresso vel suppresso, in Genere, Numero & Casu; ut,

Bonus vir.

Triste [negotium.]

II. Substantiva significantia eandem rem conveniunt in Casu; ut,

Dominus Deus.

III. Omnis infinivitus regitur à Verbo vel Nomine expressis vel suppressis; ut,

Cupio discere.

Dignus amari.

Populus [cœpit] *mirari.*

I. EVERY *Adjective agrees with a Substantive exprest or understood, in Gender, Number and Case; as,*

A good Man.

A sad Thing.

II. *Substantives signifying the same Thing agree in Case; as,*

The Lord God.

III. *Every Infinitive is governed by a Verb or Noun exprest or understood; as,*

I desire to learn.

Worthy to be loved.

The People wondred.

EXPLANATION.

ALL *Construction* is either TRUE or APPARENT, or (as Grammarians express it) JUST or FIGURATIVE. TRUE *Construction* is founded upon the essential Properties of Words, and is almost the same in all Languages. APPARENT *Construction* intirely depends upon *Custom*, which either for Elegance or Dispatch, leaves out a great many Words otherwise necessary to make a Sentence perfectly full and Grammatical. The first is comprised in these few *Fundamental Rules*, and more fully branched out in the *Larger Syntax*. The other is also interspersed through the *Larger Syntax*, but distinguished from that which is *True* by an *Astreisk*.

The *Cases* mentioned in the *Rules* of the *Larger Syntax* immediately discover the *Rules* of this *Summary* to which they respectively belong; then that are *True* without any *Ellipsis*; these that are *Figurative* by having their *Ellipsis* supplied as follows, as they are numbred in the Margin.

To RULE II. are reduced Numb. 13. supple *negotium*. Numb. 14 and 47, sup. *de causa, gratia,* or *in re, negotio*. Numb. 15. sup. *è numero*. Numb. 21, sup. *de negotio*. Numb. 22 and 23, sup. *officium, negotium,* &c. Numb. 24, sup. *t. sat*, taken from the Verb. 2. *de causa,* &c. Numb. 29, sup. *memoriam, notitiam, verba,* &c. Numb. 30, sup. *de crimine, pœna,* &c. Numb. 35 and 36, sup. *pro re,* or *pretio æris*. Numb. 40, sup. *inter negotia,* and *res* [fert] *se ad negotia*. Numb. 42, sup. *res, negotium,* &c. Numb. 56, sup. *in urbe*. Numb. 60, *Domi,* sup. *in ædibus*. Numb. 66, these *Adverbs* seem to be taken for *Substantive* Nouns.

To RULE III. is reduced Numb. 73, sup. *malum est;* or these *Interjections* are used as *Substantives*.

To

To RULE IV. belong Numb. 18, 53 and 62, sup. *ad* Numb. 33. sup. and ad. Numb. 41. *i. e.* *Est inter mea negotia; Refert* [or *res fert*] *se ad mea negotia,* &c. Numb. 58. sup. *ad* or *in.* Numb. 64. sup. *per.* Numb. 73. sup. *sentio, lugeo,* &c.

To RULE VI. belong Numb. 12. sup. *e, ex,* or *cum.* Numb. 19. sup. *e.* Numb. 20. sup. *de, e, ex, cum,* &c. Numb. 21. sup. *a, ab,* &c. Numb. 34, sup. *pro.* Numb. 37, 38. sup. *a, ab, de, e, ex.* Numb. 51 and 55. sup. *præ, cum, a, ab, e, ex,* &c. Numb. 54. sup. *in* or *de.* Numb. 57, sup. *in.* Numb. 59, sup. *a, ab, e, ex.* Numb. 62, sup. *in.* Numb. 64, sup. *in* or *pro.* Numb. 65, sup. *sub, cum, a, ab.*

NOTE, 1. That under *Verbs* must also be comprehended *Participles, Gerunds* and *Supines,* because the general Signification of *Verb* is included in them.

NOTE, 2. That as a Consequence of this, a learned Grammarian ingeniously supposes that the *Dative* and *Infinitive* are always governed by a *Verb,* and that when they seem to be governed by a *Noun,* the Participle *existens* is understood; as, *Utilis* [*existens*] *bello. Pollio præsidium* [*existens*] *reis. Dignus* [*existens*] *amari.*

NOTE, 3. That the *Vocative* is properly no Part of a Sentence, but the Case by which we excite one to hear or execute what we say. Therefore when the *Vocative* is put before the *Imperative,* as frequently happens, the *Nominative* TU or VOS is understood; and that even tho' these Words be already exprest in the *Vocative;* as, *Tu Jacobe lege,* i. e. *O tu Jacobe, tu lege.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Vocative* is sufficient to itself, and does not necessarily require the *Interjection* O. See *Vossius, Lib.* VII. *Cap.* 69. and *Sanctius, Lib.* IV. *de Ellipsi Verb.* Audio & Narro.

CHAP. II.
Of **Exposition** or **Resolution.**

EXPOSITION or RESOLUTION is the unfolding of a *Sentence,* and placing all the Parts of it, whether exprest or understood, in their proper Order, that the true Sense and Meaning of it may appear.

I. A SENTENCE is either *Simple* or *Compound.*

1. A SIMPLE *Sentence* is that which hath one *Finite Verb* in it.

2. A COMPOUND *Sentence* is that which hath two or more such Verbs in it, joined together by some *Couples.*

These COUPLES are of four Sorts, 1. The *Relative* QUI. 2. Some *Comparative* Words, such as, *tantus, quantus; talis, qualis; tam, quàm,* &c. 3. *Indefinite* Words [See Page 70 and 99.] 4. *Conjunctions.*

In a *Simple Sentence* there are two Things to be considered, 1. Its *Essential,* 2. Its *Accidental* Parts.

1. The *Essential* Parts of a *Sentence* are a *Nominative* and a *Verb.*

2. The *Accidental* Parts are of four Kinds, 1. Such as excite *Attention,* as the *Vocative* and *exciting Particles;* as, *O, en, ecce, heus,* &c. 2. Such as serve to *introduce* a Sentence, or to shew its *Dependence* upon what was said before; as, *Jam, hactenus, quandoquidem, cum, dum, interea,* &c. 3. Such as *limit* the general and indefinite Signification either of the *Nominative* or *Verb,* and these are *Substantive Nouns.* 4. Such as *qualify* and *explain* them, viz.

Adje-

Adjectives, Adverbs and *Prepositions*, with their Cases. Sometimes a Part of a *Compound* Sentence supplies the Place of those two laſt Kinds of Words.

II. The ORDER of Words in a Sentence is either *Natural* or *Artificial*.

1. NATURAL *Order* is when the Words of a Sentence naturally follow one after another in the ſame Order with the Conceptions of our Minds.

ARTIFICIAL *Order* is when Words are ſo ranged as to render them moſt agreeable to the Ear; but ſo as the Senſe be not thereby obſcured.

III. A *Sentence* may be reſolved from the *Artificial* into the *Natural Order* by the following Rules.

1. Take the *Vocative, Exciting* and *Introductory* Words, where they are found.

2. The NOMINATIVE.

3. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *i. e.* Words agreeing with, or governed by it, or by another ſucceſſively (till you come to the *Verb*) where they are found.

4. The VERB.

5. Words *limiting* or *explaining* it, *&c.* where they are found, to the End of the Sentence.

6. Supply every where the Words that are underſtood.

7. If the Sentence is compound, take the Parts of it ſeverally, as they depend upon one another, proceeding with each of them as before.

EXAMPLE.

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique perſuade eſſe te quidem mihi cariſſimum ; ſed multo fore cariorem, ſi talibus monumentis præceptiſque lætabere. Cic. Off. lib. 3.

Farewel then my [Son] Cicero, and aſſure yourſelf that you are indeed very dear unto me; but ſhall be much dearer, if you ſhall take Delight in ſuch Writings and Inſtructions.

This *Compound Sentence* is reſolved into theſe five *Simple Sentences.*

1. *Igitur mi* [fili] *Cicero,* [tu] *vale,* 2. *&* [tu] *perſuade tibi te eſſe quidem cariſſimum* [filium] *mihi* ; 3. *ſed* [tu perſuade tibi te] *fore cariorem* [filium mihi in] *multo* [negotio] 4. *ſi* [tu] *lætabere talibus monumentis,* 5. *&* [ſi tu lætabere talibus] *præceptis.*

NOTE, 1. That *Interrogative* Words ſtand always firſt in a *Sentence,* unleſs a *Prepoſition* comes before them.

NOTE, 2. That *Negative* Words ſtand immediately before the *Verb.*

NOTE, 3. That *Relatives* are placed before the Word by which they are governed, unleſs it is a *Prepoſition.*

NOTE, 4. That the *Subjunctive* Mood is uſed in *Compound Sentences.*

NOTE, 5. That the Parts of a *Compound Sentence* are ſeparated from one another by theſe *Marks* called INTERPUNCTIONS. 1. Theſe that are ſmaller, named *Clauſes,* by this Mark (,) called a *Comma.* 2. Theſe that are greater, named *Members,* by this Mark (:) called *Colon,* or this (;) called a *Semicolon.* 3. When a Sentence is thrown in, that hath little or no Connexion with the reſt, it is incloſed within what we call a *Parentheſis,* marked thus ( ).

But when the *Sentence,* whether *Simple* or *Compound,* is fully ended, if it is a plain *Affirmation* or *Negation,* it is cloſed with this Mark (.) called a *Point.* If a Queſtion is asked, with this Mark (?) called a *Point of Interrogation.* If *Wonder* or ſome other ſudden *Paſſion* is ſignified, with this Mark (!) called a *Point of Admiration.*

F I N I S.